

Ehrhard
A ROSARY OF RUBIES

COLLECTANEA HIMALAYICA

Studies on the History and Culture of the Himalayas and Tibet

Edited by Prof. Dr. Franz-Karl Ehrhard (Munich)

VOL. 1 (2007)

Ralf Kramer, *The Great Tibetan Translator: Life and Works of
rNgog Blo ldan shes rab (1059–1109)*

VOL. 2 (2008)

Franz-Karl Ehrhard, *A Rosary of Rubies: The Chronicle of the
Gur-rigs mDo-chen Tradition from South-Western Tibet*

2008

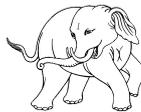
INDUS VERLAG · MÜNCHEN

COLLECTANEA HIMALAYICA 2

A Rosary of Rubies

The Chronicle of the Gur-rigs mDo-chen Tradition
from South-Western Tibet

Franz-Karl Ehrhard



INDUS
VERLAG

PROF. DR. FRANZ-KARL EHRHARD (born 1953) studied Tibetology, Indology, and Social Anthropology at the University of Hamburg (M.A. 1982, Dr. phil. 1987, Habilitation 1998) and has been professor for Tibetan and Buddhist studies at the University of Munich since 2003. He was resident representative of the Nepal Research Centre and the *Nepal-German Manuscript Preservation Project* in Kathmandu, Nepal, from 1988 to 1993, and a research fellow in the DFG-funded project on *Staatenbildung und Siedlungsprozesse im tibetischen Himalaya* from 1993 to 1998. A former visiting professor at the Universities of Vienna (2000) and Harvard (2001), he remains a research fellow of the Lumbini International Research Institute, Nepal. His publications include more than thirty articles and the following monographs: *Flügelschläge des Garuḍa* (Stuttgart 1990), *Early Buddhist Block Prints from Mang-yul Gung-thang* (Lumbini 2000), *Life and Travels of Lo-chen ḅSod-nams rgya-mtsho* (Lumbini 2002), and *Die Statue und der Tempel des Ārya Va-ti bzang-po* (Wiesbaden 2004).

Bibliografische Information der Deutschen Nationalbibliothek:

Die Deutsche Nationalbibliothek verzeichnet diese Publikation in der Deutschen Nationalbibliografie; detaillierte bibliografische Daten sind im Internet über <http://dnb.d-nb.de> abrufbar.

Copyright © 2008 by INDUS VERLAG, München (info@indus-verlag.de)

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced in any form without written permission from the publisher, except for the quotation of brief passages in criticism.

Printed and bound in Hungary

ISSN 1865-5327 (Collectanea Himalayica)

ISBN 978-3-940659-01-9

*In memory of
Lama Chökyi Nyima of Kutang
(1953–2006)*

Contents

<i>Preface</i>	9
Part One	
Introduction.....	13
The <i>Ma-mo mched-bdun</i>	15
The mDo-chen bKa'-brgyud-pa.....	24
The Gur Family.....	28
Part Two	
Edition of the <i>dPal ldan gur rigs mdo chen brgyud pa'i lo rgyus nyung ngu'i ngag gi brjod pa padma rā ga'i phreng ba</i>	35
Translation.....	55
<i>Appendices</i>	97
Appendix I: The <i>mDo chen bka' brgyud gser 'phreng</i>	99
Appendix II: The “Thob yig of the 17 th Century”	102
<i>Bibliography</i>	121
Tibetan Texts	123
Western Literature.....	128
<i>Index</i>	133
Names of People, Families, Deities and Bodhisattvas	133
Geographical Names, Monasteries and Temples	138
General.....	140
<i>Plates</i>	143
Facsimile of the <i>dPal ldan gur rigs mdo chen brgyud pa'i lo rgyus nyung ngu'i ngag gi brjod pa padma rā ga'i phreng ba</i>	145

Preface

The present study is a further outcome of my investigations into the cultural and religious traditions of the sKyid-grong region in south-western Tibet and the neighbouring Himalayan valleys. It is based on literary sources, for the greater part manuscripts in *dbu med* script, particularly the writings of Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku Chos-kyi dbang-phyug (1775–1837). His set of collected writings (*gsung 'bum*) has already formed the basis for a description of the religious geography of the region (Ehrhard 2004a). Amongst the historical works contained in the *gsung 'bum* I came across a rare chronicle treating a local Buddhist tradition associated with the cult of a group of female protective deities. My interest in this topic and the mDo-chen bKa'-brgyud-pa school as a whole goes back to travels in the Nepalese Himalayas in the 1990s, when the written sources used for this book became accessible for the first time.

The chronicle of this little-known bKa'-brgyud-pa school, which is presented in a critical edition, an annotated translation and a photographic reproduction below, was first read with students at Harvard University (Tibetan and Himalayan Studies) in 2001, and it is with great pleasure that I remember the classes. At that time E. Gene Smith—who had just established the Tibetan Buddhist Resource Center (TBRC) in a semi-detached house in Cambridge, Massachusetts—shared his interest in the mDo-chen bKa'-brgyud-pa school with me, and he also reminded me of the important *gser 'phreng* text of the tradition when the study was in its final phase. A last reading of some parts of the chronicle was undertaken with students at Ludwig-Maximilians-Universität in Munich (Institute of Indology and Tibetology) in 2008, which helped to clarify some difficult passages.

The main load of editing, proof-reading and indexing the present book was shouldered by Ralf Kramer, Bavarian State Library, Munich, and I have to thank him for the smooth cooperation. The printing of the work was made possible through a grant from the Tara Stiftung (Düsseldorf), whose continued support is gratefully acknowledged.

Munich, in the autumn 2008

Part One

Introduction

During the 12th and 13th centuries the bKa'-brgyud-pa school of Tibetan Buddhism gave way to a proliferation of sub-sects, which came to be known as the "four great [lineages]" (*che bzhi*) and the "eight lesser [lineages]" (*chung brgyad*). From among the latter the 'Brug-pa bKa'-brgyud-pa school was in its initial phase dominated by two important religious figures: Ling Ras-pa Padma rdo-rje (1128–1188) and gTsang-pa rGya-ras Ye-shes rdo-rje (1161–1211). The basic outlines of their respective lives are known to us and a reading of their biographies suggests that they were quite divergent personalities. Ling Ras-pa Padma rdo-rje can best be described as a wandering bard with only limited commitment to establishing religious institutions, while gTsang-pa rGyas-ras Ye-shes rdo-rje appears more like a consolidator, interested in scholasticism and religious institutions.¹

The self-understanding of the newly founded 'Brug-pa bKa'-brgyud-pa school is detectable in a 13th-century historiographical source originating from the religious circles around rGod-tshang-pa mGon-po rdo-rje (1189–1258). He is known together with Lo-ras-pa dBang-phyug brtson-'grus (1187–1250) as one of the two major disciples of gTsang-pa rGya-ras Ye-shes rdo-rje. They founded the "Upper 'Brug" (*stod 'brug*) and the "Lower 'Brug" (*smad 'brug*) branches of the 'Brug-pa bKa'-brgyud-pa school, respectively, and have both left autobiographical writings and arranged their own collected works. rGod-tshang-pa had in turn several disciples called "great sons" (*bu chen*) and some of them were responsible for establishing further sub-branches in south-western Tibet. Among these disciples one finds a person known as Ma-bdun ras-chen or Ma-bdun-pa (12th/13th cent.), who had received that latter name "because he meditated at a place in Kyirong (sKyid-grong) where Guru Rinpoche bound to oath the seven Mamo."²

¹ For an overview of the emergence of the different lineages of the bKa'-brgyud-pa school, see Smith (2001:41–43). Concerning the concept of "lineage" (*brgyud pa*)—defined as "a fluid and adaptable collection of material and non-material transmissions that are passed down from one generation to the next"—and a first assessment of the lives of Ling Ras-pa Padma rdo-rje and gTsang-pa rGya-ras Ye-shes rdo-rje, compare Blythe Miller (2005:374–375 & 379–396).

² See Smith (2001:43–45) for the further development of the 'Brug-pa bKa'-brgyud-pa school and its sub-branches. The 13th-century historiographical source mentioned above bears the title *'Brug pa'i lo rgyus zur tsam* and has been translated and commented on by Blythe Miller (2006:10–34). In the commentary on the list of the nine disciples of rGod-tshang-pa mGon-po rdo-rje, the one known as Ma-bdun-pa is not credited with having established an own sub-branch.

The full designation of this yogin in the document is Ma-bdun-pa mDo-bo che-ba, thus pointing not only to his involvement with the “Seven Mothers” (*ma mo bdun*), a group of female religious protectors in the region of Mang-yul Gung-thang, but also to a specific place known as mDo-bo-che, obviously located in the domain of the old Tibetan kingdom in south-western Tibet as well. Up to now not much information has become available on this little-known lineage of the ’Brug-pa bKa’-brgyud-pa school and the involvement of its founder with the teachings of the Precious Guru Padmasambhava. In the following I will present a chronicle of the mDo-chen bKa’-brgyud-pa, as Ma-bdun-pa’s tradition is known, written by Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku Chos-kyi dbang-phyug (1775–1837). It is presented with the aim to show how a sub-branch of the ’Brug-pa bKa’-brgyud-pa school developed in a local context and was transmitted from a certain point onwards by members of a particular family from that region.

The author Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku Chos-kyi dbang-phyug was a Buddhist master of local fame from Mang-yul Gung-thang, who held teaching traditions of both the ’Brug-pa and the rNying-ma-pa schools of Tibetan Buddhism. The course of his life has already been sketched and an overview of his collected writings is available. The latter collection comprises ten volumes and apart from biographies it contains a great number of ritual literature, personal letters and especially “chronicles” (*lo rgyus*), which shed new light on local Buddhist traditions and are marked by a distinct interest in historical matters. These collected writings have survived only in one manuscript edition, which had been saved from oblivion by Slob-dpon ’Gyur-med from the Nub-ri region in the Nepalese Himalayas; he is known as a student of Brag-dkar-ba bsTan-’dzin nor-bu (1899–1959), the last resident teacher at the famous Mi-la ras-pa site of Brag-dkar rta-so.³

In order to provide some background information on the chronicle’s treatment of the ’Brug-pa lineage going back to Ma-bdun-pa I will first present some materials on the cult of the “Seven Mothers” in the sKyid-grong area, followed by a cursory treatment of the literary sources dealing with the mDo-chen bKa’-brgyud-pa and the Gur family. The main reference point

³ The main events of Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku’s life and his efforts in propagating the teachings of the ’Brug-pa and rNying-ma-pa traditions in Mang-yul Gung-thang are sketched in Ehrhard (2004a:89–107); for the contents of the ten volumes of his collected writings, see Ehrhard (2004a:535–564). The existence of the “entire records” of Brag-dkar rta-so being in the hands of Slob-dpon ’Gyur-med was first pointed out by Aris (1975:80–81). For the role of Slob-dpon ’Gyur-med as a contemporary Buddhist teacher in the Nub-ri region, see Childs (2004:17–18). Biographical details concerning Brag-dkar-ba bsTan-’dzin nor-bu are contained in his *gDan rabs lo rgyus drang srong dga’ ba’i dal gtam gyi kha skong*, pp. 33.6 ff.

will be the writings of Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku Chos-kyi dbang-phyug, as presently there is no better source on the history and the individual representatives of this Buddhist lineage from south-western Tibet.

The *Ma-mo mched-bdun*

The presence of a cult of the “Seven Ma-mo Sisters” (*ma mo mched bdun*) in the sKyid-grong region of Mang-yul Gung-thang is known from the personal memoirs of Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku, and they bear witness to the fact that he was personally engaged in rituals devoted to this group of protective deities. Let me quote two events from his autobiography, which show that the goddesses were venerated at specific sacred sites or Buddhist temples in that area; these events are dated to the years 1823 and 1824, respectively:

According [to the wish] from the people of sKyid-grong that I should perform the commandment [and] the requesting to [the goddess] Ma-bdun-ma because each year on earlier [and] later occasions many people had died due to a fierce epidemic, by arranging the ritual offer of burning incense, ablution [and] an accumulation of offering cakes at the residence of [the goddess] Ma-bdun-ma, I made effective the atonement ritual for the Seven Vajra Mothers and the requesting: from that year onwards the stream of the epidemic became like water that had been interrupted, [and this] manifested itself as common knowledge of all [people].⁴

I newly composed [the work] “Dance which pleases all the Ma-mos”, [a ritual text dealing with] the mDos [effigy] for propitiating rDo-rje Legs-ldan-ma, the female protector of the vihāra of Byams[-pa] phrin. And after I had adjusted [the sections on] the practice of the ritual acts of the mDos [effigy], although there were made arrangements to construct extensively a mDos [effigy] for propitiating [the goddess] through acts by myself and others in the vihāra, in combination with a hundred religious offerings based on [the work] *Thugs sgrub las byang 'bring po* [of the Northern Treasurers], I did not know if there

⁴ See Chos-kyi dbang-phyug: *Bya bral ba chos kyi dbang phyug gi rang 'tshang lhug par brjod pa*, fol. 189b/1–3 (*skyid grong pa rnams nas snga sor lo btud mar [= lo stud mar] nad rims drag pos mi mang shi bar ma bdun mar bka' bsgo phrin bcol byed dgos tshul bzhin / gtor tshogs bshams par rdo rje ma mo bdun gyi bskang gso dang phrin bcol gnad smin du bgyis pa 'di lo nas bzung nad rims kyi rgyun chu bcad pa ltar gyur pa kun gyi shes gsal byung song*). For Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku's life in the period from 1821 onwards, which was dominated by religious activities in the wider sKyid-grong area, see Ehrhard (2004a: 102–104 & 119).

had come about joy or shame, [and] there did not manifest itself at all any negative or positive sign [of something done] rightly [or] wrongly. Although it was pretended that from then on a continuously practised custom [of this ritual] had been established, it appears difficult [to believe] that it was something real.⁵

These descriptions allow us, first, to get some general idea about the so-called “Seven Mothers” (*sapta mātaraḥ*), a group of autochthonous territorial goddesses particularly known for their presence in northern India. As in the case of the inhabitants of the sKyid-grong area they were considered to be of a malignant nature, causing epidemic diseases and had to be pacified and controlled by ritual means. In the Tibetan Buddhist tradition the initial act of taming these kinds of goddesses and transforming them into “protectors of the [Buddha’s] pronouncement” (*bka’i srung ma*) is ascribed to the great adept Padmasambhava. The vast number of different assemblies of these kinds of pre-Buddhist mother goddesses—the most well-known being the group of seven—and the way how they were assimilated into a Tibetan milieu or identified with local traditions has already been addressed by earlier research. In the case of the seven mother goddesses it has been noted that they obviously belonged to an indigenous Tibetan tradition, and that they are not to be regarded as a mere continuation of the Seven Mothers as known from an Indian context.⁶

⁵ See the autobiography of Chos-kyi dbang-phyug (as in note 4), fols. 193b/1–4 (*byams sprin gtsug lag khang gi bsrung ma rdo rje legs ldan ma’i bskang mdos ma mo kun tu dgyes pa’i zlos gar zhes par gsar du btsams shing mdos chog gi phyag len sgrigs nas gtsug lag khang du rang mi rang las kyis thugs sgrub las byang ’bring po la rien [= bsten] ishogs brgya dang ’brel ba’i bskang mdos rgyas par gtang ba gra grig par byung song kyang dgyes pa bskyed dam khrel yod ni ma shes / legs nyes bzang ngan gyi rtags mtshan ni gang yang ma byung mod / phyin chad rgyun du gtong ba’i srol gtsugs [= btsugs] khul yin kyang don du gyur ba zbig dka’ bar snang*). The ritual text *Thugs sgrub las byang ’bring po* mentioned by the author has not survived. rDo-rje Ma-bdun-ma and rDo-rje Legs-ldan-ma are particularly known as those members from the Ma-mo group, who are invoked when consecrating the *ma mo mdos*, the special thread-cross effigy offered to the female protective deities; see Nebesky-Wojkowitz (1956:275).

⁶ The question of the “Seven Great Mothers” (*ma mo chen mo bdun*) and whether or not their underlying Indian concept should be identified with Tibetan traditions was, for example, raised by Hoffmann (1950:168). A subsequent investigation into the cult of the Ma-mo deities in Tibetan Buddhism concluded that in the case of the rNying-ma-pa school the group of seven goddesses, which is characterized by the attribute of acting as protectors of the Buddhist doctrine, should be regarded more like an indigenous tradition; see Neumaier (1966:28–29). For the fact that the seven goddesses are not mentioned in those volumes of the *rNying ma rgyud ’bum* dedicated to the Ma-mo deities, compare Blondeau (2002:293–294). Concerning the category of the Ma-mo as *laukika*-level deities connected especially with Padmasambhava, see Seyfort Ruegg (2008:61).

As had already been the case in an Indian context, where the group of seven goddesses came to be associated with the Buddhist tantric concept of the maṇḍala, also in Tibet the seven great mothers became female protectors of a wrathful maṇḍala, the task of taming being ascribed to Padmasambhava. This has recently been shown on the basis of an early literary document (i.e. PT 307) dating from the period of the Tibetan empire, which sheds new light on the development of the Padmasambhava legend. Nevertheless, although the list of the seven goddesses shares names with many other native Tibetan deities it is impossible to locate the homes of these seven sisters by identifying their individual places of residence in a particular landscape. Although identifications of this kind are extremely difficult to make, it seems that the border region of south-western Tibet, its topography being strongly infused with the legends of Padmasambhava's travels, offers a possible area in this connection. With this observation I am returning to the descriptions of Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku.⁷

In 1823 when Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku, the teacher at the Mi-la ras-pa site to the north of sKyid-grong, had conducted ritual offerings to the main goddess Ma-bdun-ma upon the request of the people of sKyid-grong, he also composed a further chronicle. It deals with the history of the *Ma-mo mched-bdun*, paying special attention to the literary sources of the cult and the iconographical representations of the individual deities. The text has already been used for identifying the geographical locations in the sKyid-grong region, where Padmasambhava is said to have tamed this group of deities, and where the 'Brug-pa bKa'-brgyud-pa yogin bearing the name of the main goddess had taken up residence. One of the places of Padmasambhava's taming activities was known as Me-sho lung-pa, located in sPang-zhing in the vicinity of the vihāra of Byams-pa sprin, one of the four *Yang-'dul* temples founded during the time of Srong-btsan sgam-po, Tibet's first Buddhist ruler. According to the chronicle from 1823 the same vihāra also became the seat of rDo-rje Legs-ldan-ma, one of the Seven Ma-mo Sisters. Two of the remaining goddesses had their seat in the village of sKyid-grong itself; the one known as rDo-rje Ma-bdun-ma at a place called So-chu and rDo-rje Sa-lung-ma in Sa-lung, i.e. the site from which she derived her name. The cave,

⁷ The process of how the autochthonous territorial deities of the Seven Mothers came to be associated with a Buddhist tantric maṇḍala in India has been described by Davidson (2002:300–303); it is noted that unlike in normative Buddhist maṇḍalas there is no privileging of one member over another, the Seven Mothers are simply members of a circle. For PT 307 and the list of the seven goddesses as protectors of the maṇḍala of Śrī Mahā Heruka, see Dalton (2004:764–768). None of the names and iconography of the individual deities in this document correspond to the tradition from the sKyid-grong region.

where the disciple of rGod-tshang-pa mGon-po rdo-rje had stayed was located near Sa-lung in sKyid-grong and it was there that the spiritual bond was established between him and the main goddess of the *Ma-mo mched-bdun*.⁸

The above-mentioned chronicle provides further information concerning the cult of the Seven Ma-mo Sisters and I will consult it now in order to assess the iconography of the individual goddesses and find out upon which literary sources this specific tradition of the autochthonous territorial deities from south-western Tibet was based. The following elaborations are made in regard to the iconographical details:

Here, the visualisation (*abhisamaya*) of the Seven Vajra Mothers of the tantric activities as well: concerning the main one (i.e. rDo-rje Ma-bdun-ma) that is easy indeed [to be seen] above according to well-known information in the [root text] *mChod gzhung*. As the others are not clearly [described] in the visualisation [instructions], if one [nevertheless] should speak [about them] because one is happy to identify the paintings of their individual images[, it is as follows]: rDo-rje Legs-ldan-ma has a beautiful appearance, holds in her right [hand] a ceremonial arrow and in her left [hand] a mirror; she rides a black hen. rDo-rje Byang-sman[-ma] has the appearance of a goddess, holds in her right [hand] a mirror and in her left [hand] a magic lasso. rDo-rje Sa-lung-ma is of a pleasing appearance, holds in her right [hand] a vajra and in her left [hand] a lasso of snakes; she rides a magically manifested hen. rDo-rje dByangs-ldan-ma has the appearance of a virgin; her right [hand] holds a rosary and her left [hand] an iron hook. rDo-rje Gar-lon-ma has a youthful appearance, her right [hand] holds a blazing jewel and her left [hand] a sword of meteoric iron. rDo-rje gSal-'phro-ma has the appearance of a virgin goddess, her right [hand] holds a book and her left [hand] a diamond wheel.

⁸ See Chos-kyi dbang-phyug: *rDo rje ma bdun ma'i lo rgyus*, fol. 5a/3–b/1 (the taming of the goddesses), fol. 4a/1–4 (the sites of rDo-rje Ma-bdun-ma and rDo-rje Sa-lung-ma) and fols. 7a/5–8a/2 (the vision of Ma-bdun ras-chen at Ma-bdun phug). These details have also been incorporated by Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku into his detailed exposition of the religious geography of Mang-yul Gung-thang, written in 1828; for translations of the relevant passages, see Ehrhard (2004a:283–284 & 413–414, note 179), and Ehrhard (2004a:281 & 399, notes 158–159). For the arrival of Padmasambhava in the sKyid-grong region and the act of taming according to the later biographical tradition of the master, see Blo-gros rgyal-mtshan: *Slob dpon sangs rgyas gnyis pa padma 'byung gnas kyi rnam par thar pa*, pp. 80.6–81.1 (*de nas mun la ru mang yul gyi srin mo spun bdun gyi [= gyis] sems can der byung ba thams cad snyor 'jug pa der phyin pa dang de dag gis mun khang btang bas / sgrub pa bzhab bdun mdzad de btul nas phyin chad gnod pa mi byed pa'i dam bca' mang po mdzad*).

All are dressed goddesses and are adorned with ornaments of a variety of silk, flowers [and] jewels.

Although their individual secret names are according to the information above, [the rumour] that there exists a [goddess] called rDo-rje Yal-ldan-ma these days in [the villages of] sKyid-grong, Grva [and] gNas and so forth, this is [based on facts] unknown. Also the implements of rDo-rje Legs-ldan-ma, it is said in the root text *mChod gzhung*, which had come forth as a treasure: “In her right [hand] she brandishes a golden vajra, in her left [hand] she holds a mirror of white silver; in the night she establishes the capital of sickness.” And in the [text called] *Zla ba’i shel ’phreng*, a praise [of rDo-rje Legs-ldan-ma] composed by the Vidyādhara Yol-mo-ba [bsTan-’dzin nor-bu] (1598–1644) it is said: “[In her] right [hand] a clear mirror [which reflects] the true nature of the world; [in her] left [hand] a lasso of snakes which summons the life-essence that causes damage,” and “[she holds] a sharp sword [and] a fierce arrow of long range.”⁹

This account shows that the seven Ma-mo sisters were depicted on paintings and that even within the local setting of the sKyid-grong region there existed varieties in the pictorial representation of individual deities. This is particularly true in the case of rDo-rje Legs-ldan-ma, the goddess associated with the vihāra of Byams-pa sprin, with differing descriptions in a

⁹ See the text of Chos-kyi dbang-phyug (as in note 8), fol. 11a/3–b/7 (*’dir las kyi ma mo bdun gyi mngon rtogs kyang gtsa mo ni mchod gzhung du gsal ba yongs grags ltar gong du sla mod / gzhan rnams mngon rtogs su gsal kha mi ’dug pas so so’i gzugs brnyan ri mor ’bri ba’i ngos ’dzin bde ba’i phyir smos na / rdo rje legs ldan ma mdzes pa’i gzugs can g.yas mda’ dar dang / g.yon me long ’dzin pa bya mo nag mo la zhon pa / rdo rje byang sman lha mo’i gzugs can g.yas me long dang g.yon ’phrul gyi zhags pa ’dzin pa / rdo rje sa lung ma yid ’ong ma’i gzugs can g.yas rdo rje dang g.yon sbrul zhags ’dzin pa sprul pa’i bya mo la zhon pa / rdo rje dbyangs ldan ma gzhon nu ma’i gzugs can g.yas phreng ba dang g.yon lcags kyu bshams pa / rdo rje ga lor ma [= gar lon ma] lang tsho ma’i gzugs can g.yas rin chen ’bar ba dang g.yon gnams lcags kyi ral gri bsnams pa / rdo rje gsal ’phro ma lha mo gzhon nu ma’i gzugs can g.yas pusti dang g.yon pha lam gyi ’khor lo bsnams pa / thams cad kyang lha mo’i cha byad can dar dang / me tog / rin chen sna tshogs kyi rgyan gyis brgyan pa’o // so so’i gsang mtshan kyang gong du gsal ba ltar yin kyang ding sang skyid grong / grva gnas sogs su rdo rje yal ldan ma zer ba zhig ’dug pa ni cha ma [= mi] ’shal lo / rdo rje legs ldan ma’i phyag mtshan kyang / mchod gzhung rtsa bar / phyag g.yas gser gyi rdo rje gdeng: g.yon pa dangul dkar me long bsnams: mtshan na nad kyi rgyal sa btsug : zhes dang / rig ’dzin yol mo pas mdzad pa’i bstod pa zla ba’i shel phreng du / snang srid chos nyid gsal ba’i me long g.yas / gnod byed bla srog ’gugs byed sbrul zhags g.yon / zhes dang / rno ba’i ral gri dpag chen drag po’i mda’ / zhes gsungs). The iconographical details of rDo-rje Ma-bdun-ma can be found *ibid.*, fol. 8a/2–4. This description has been incorporated by Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku in his account of the encounter between the main goddess and Ma-bdun ras-chen in the chronicle on the Gur-rigs mDo-chen tradition; see Translation, note 5.*

treasure text and in a work devoted specifically to that goddess. It is known from the chronicle of Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku that the aforementioned Yol-mo-ba bsTan-'dzin nor-bu, an influential master of the rNying-ma-pa school with close connections to the royal house of the Gung-thang rulers, had a vision of rDo-rje Legs-ldan-ma while staying in the temple. This happened during a renovation of Byams-pa sprin when an adjacent building of the temple was painted with new murals; it was this vision which led to the composition of the praise for the deity and related ritual activities. Through the autobiography of bsTan-'dzin nor-bu it is possible to date this event to the year 1632; it included the extended renovation in addition to the manufacturing of statues—like the one of Che-mchog-pa, a prominent member of the Gur family—, the production of a painted image of the supine body of the demoness nailed down by the arrangement of Tibet's first royal temples, and especially a painted image of the “One Mother” (*ma gcig*) rDo-rje Legs-ldan-ma.¹⁰

With two of the group of seven goddesses, i.e. rDo-rje Ma-bdun-ma and rDo-rje Sa-lung-ma, having their seat in the village of sKyid-grong, and one, i.e. rDo-rje Legs-ldan-ma, having it in the temple of Byams-pa sprin in sPang-zhing, the question arises whether the remaining four sisters are to be located in the area of Mang-yul Gung-thang, too. The chronicle of Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku remains silent in regard to rDo-rje Byang-smān-ma, in whose case no seat is given at all. The other three sisters are all associated with geographical regions to the west of Mang-yul Gung-thang: rDo-rje dByangs-ldan-ma with the vihāra of sPra-dun rtse, one of the four *mTha'-dul* temples founded during the time of Srong-btsan sgam-po, rDo-rje Gar-lon-ma with the village of gTsang-rang in Glo-bo, present-day Mustang in the Nepalese Himalayas, and rDo-rje gSal-'phro-ma with Khyung-lung Zhang-zhung in the Gu-ge region of Western Tibet. The latter identification is discussed in the chronicle quite extensively, mainly in the context of the visions and travels of Kaḥ-thog Rig-'dzin Tshe-dbang nor-bu (1698–

¹⁰ For the vision of the Third Yol-mo-ba sPrul-sku and the composition of the praise, see the text of Chos-kyi dbang-phyug (as in note 8), fol. 8b/4–6. The renovation of the vihāra of Byams-pa sprin in the year 1632 is one of the last events described in the autobiographical account; see bsTan-'dzin nor-bu: *Rang gi rtogs pa brjod pa*, pp. 260.1–262.3, and Bogin (2005:242–243). The classification scheme of Tibet's first royal temples as depicted in a drawing and on recent photographs of the individual vihāras can be found in Sørensen & Hazod (2005:204–215). The Third Yol-mo-ba sPrul-sku was assisted in the actual production of the murals at the temple complex of Byams-pa sprin and the painting of the image of rDo-rje Legs-ldan-ma by Nam-mkha' kun-bzang, a grandson of the treasure-discoverer Rig-'dzin bsTan-gnyis gling-pa (1480–1535); for the relationship between the two masters as described in Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku's chronicle of the latter's descendants, see Ehrhard (2007a:41).

1755), another master of the rNying-ma-pa school engaged in the cult of the Seven Ma-mo sisters.¹¹

The reference to a second of Tibet's first Buddhist temples as a residence for another member of the *Ma-mo mched-bdun* is, of course, of particular interest as it suggests that the vihāras of Byams-pa sprin and sPra-dun rtse—both located on the western border of the territory of the early Tibetan kings—were connected as sites of this particular tradition of autochthonous territorial deities. This connection between Buddhist temples and protective deities brings us to the question on which literary sources the cult of the Seven Ma-mo Sisters as found in Mang-yul Gung-thang was actually based. Once again the chronicle of Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku provides some clarifications:

Now, it is known that the sādhana of the Seven Vajra Mothers exists as the three paper scrolls of the four tantric activities [in their] outer, inner [and] secret [aspect]. Among them [1] the paper scroll for the accomplishment [of the deities], [which is] the accomplishment into one of the individual ways of abiding of the seven Ma-mos, [i.e.] the complete assembly of all the Ma-mos: it is explained to be a treasure [extracted from] a stone icon [located] in [the vihāra of] Byams[-pa] sprin; [the site of] the cycle *gSo dpyad bdud rtsi bum pa* [retrieved] by the treasure-discoverer rDor-'bum Chos-kyi grags-pa (11th cent.), which is known to be an indisputable treasure [and extracted from] a stone icon [located] in [the vihāra of] Byams[-pa] sprin and the treasure site [of the paper scroll] are definitely one [and the same]. [2] The paper scroll containing the offerings for the changeable Ma-mos, [it is] a treasure [retrieved] from 'Os-por [lung-pa], [i.e.] Sha-ba ri-phug [in sPang-zhing]. [3] The paper scroll for the accomplishment of the extremely wrathful activities is a treasure [retrieved] from rGya-lung. The two other (i.e. the former) ones have already been referred to above. Concerning [the site] rGya-lung, as it is related to exactly that [place] known as rGya-lung in front of the actual [site of] “Hundred-and-some Stūpas” in the upper part of Tshong-'dus, one has to consider that it is [just this place].

¹¹ The description of the seats of the individual goddesses is contained in the chronicle of Chos-kyi dbang-phyug (as in note 8), fol. 4a/2–6. The literary source for this treatment is—like in the case of the sketch of the iconographical details—the text known as *mChod gzhung*. For the visions of Kaḥ-thog Rig-'dzin Tshe-dbang nor-bu—especially while staying in the vihāra of Byams-pa sprin—and during travels in Mustang and Ladakh, see *ibid.*, fols. 8b/6–9b/3. The association of rDo-rje gSal-'phro-ma with Khyung-lung Zhang-zhung in Gu-ge should be compared with the available writings on the religious and diplomatic activities of the rNying-ma-pa teacher from Kaḥ-thog.

Concerning the treasure-discoverer: dMar-zhabs ras-pa, a disciple of Gu-ru Chos-kyi dbang-phyug (1212–1270), the manifestation of [Ārya] Avalokiteśvara, discovered the three paper scrolls from the three treasure sites according to the prophecy by a ḍākinī.¹²

With these observations it is possible to attribute the literary tradition of the *Ma-mo mched-bdun* as found in Mang-yul Gung-thang to the 13th century and to the generation of disciples of Gu-ru Chos-kyi dbang-phyug, the second treasure-discoverer king of the rNying-ma-pa school. The sites, where the actual treasure scrolls had been recovered, were located in the wider sKyid-grong area and especially in the vihāra of Byams-pa sprin. The reference to the treasure-discoverer rDor-'bum Chos-kyi grags-pa and his cycle *gSo dpyad bdud rtsi bum pa*—a collection of medical texts which had been systematized by Byang-bdag bKra-shis stobs-rgyal (1550–1602) and was favoured by the Fifth Dalai Bla-ma Ngag-dbang Blo-bzang rgya-mtsho (1617–1682)—shows that this treasure had also been recovered in the *Yang-'dul* temple in sPang-zhing; this points once again to the fact that Tibet's first Buddhist temples were sites for the recovery of hidden treasures from the royal period, the findings resulting from the activities of different discoverers.¹³

¹² See the text of Chos-kyi dbang-phyug (as in note 8), fol. 10a/3–b/4 (*de yang rdo rje ma bdun ma'i sgrub thabs phyi nang gsang ba las bzhi'i shog ril gsum du yod par grags shing / de las sgrub pa'i shog ril ma mo kun 'dus ma mo bdun bzbugs tshul gcig tu sgrub pa byams sprin rdo sku'i gter ma yin par bshad pa ni / gter ston rdor 'bum chos kyi grags pas gso dpyad bdud rtsi bum pa'i skor byams sprin rdo sku'i gter ma rtsod med du grags pa dang gter gnas gcig par nges la / 'gyur ba'i ma mo mchod pa'i shog ril 'os por sha ba ri phug gi gter ma dang / las rnam drag por khros pa sgrub pa'i shog ril / rgya lung gi gter ma las / gzhan gnyis ni gong du smos pa zin pa dang / rgya lung ni tshong 'dus kyi gong gi mchod rten brgya rtsa'i dngos dang mdun la rgya lung zhes 'bod pa 'di nyid 'brel mtshungs pas yin no snyam mo / gter ston ni / spyan ras gzigs sprul gu ru chos kyi dbang phyug gi slob ma dmar zhabs ras pas mkha' 'gro mas lung bstan bzhin gnas gsum nas shog ril gsum gter nas ston zbig*). Sha-ba ri-phug and 'Os-por lung-pa are the old toponyms for Me-sho lung-pa, the place near sPang-zhing, where Padmasambhava performed the taming of the Seven Ma-mo sisters; see Ehrhard (2004a:284 & 413–414, note 178). For the site characterized by the remains of more than a hundred miniature caityas said to have been originally erected by Padmasambhava and its location in Tshong-'dus, see Ehrhard (2004a:282 & 402, note 164); this identification follows the tradition of the older pilgrimage guide books to Mang-yul Gung-thang. After further investigations Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku relocated the site known as “Hundred-and-some Stūpas” to a place near Rag-ma in his own guide book of 1828; compare Ehrhard (2004a:285 & 420, note 192).

¹³ Concerning the treasure findings of rDor-'bum Chos-kyi grags-pa and their transmission as received by the Fifth Dalai Bla-ma, see Ngag-dbang Blo-bzang rgya-mtsho: *Zab pa dang rgya che ba'i dam pa'i chos kyi thob yig*, vol. 2, pp. 479.2–490.1. The finding of the paper scrolls in the vihāra of Byams-pa sprin is especially highlighted; see *ibid.*, p.

It has to be clarified how this specific local tradition had reached Ma-bdun ras-chen—if at all—and how it was later transmitted by his successors, and especially by the Gur family. It seems, at least according to the records of the Fifth Dalai Bla-ma, that dMar-zhabs ras-pa had been particularly active in disseminating teachings concerning the cult of autochthonous territorial deities; thus he takes a prominent place in the rituals devoted to another group of goddesses, known as the “Twelve Female [Protectors of the] Doctrine” (*bstan ma bcu gnyis*), the relevant texts being once again discovered by Gu-ru Chos-kyi dbang-phyug.

From the writings of Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku it is further known that also Ma-bdun-pa himself belonged to the religious circle of the disciples of the second treasure-discoverer king of the rNying-ma-pa school and that he, too, was involved in the composition of ritual texts dealing with the propitiation of the *Ma-mo mched-bdun*. The latter information is contained in the records of teachings received by Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku, a text largely completed in 1820:

The lineage of how I received the entrustment itself of rDo-rje Legsldan-ma, the female protector of the family [of Rig-'dzin bsTan-gnyis gling-pa (1480–1535)] from the past, [a ritual] which precedes the offering cake initiation of the entrustment of the Seven Vajra Mothers: Gu-ru Thod-'phreng rtsal (i.e. Padmasambhava) – dMar-zhabs ras-pa – sTon-chen ras-pa – gSang-sngags chos-rgyal – Bla-ma Śākya – Ke-ti phug-pa – Kun-bzang 'byung-gnas – bSod-nams seng-ge – Chos-grub bzang-po – sNgags-'chang Che-mchog rdo-rje – Chos-dbang rdo-rje – Nam-mkha' lhun-grub – Nam-mkha' seng-ge – Nor-bu bde-chen (b. 1617) – bsTan-pa'i nor-bu – rGyal-sras seng-ge (d. 1752) – Rig-'dzin 'Gyur-med rnam-rgyal (1714–1782) – rJe Karma bdud-'joms (1726–1789). This [latter] one [transmitted the lineage] to me.

Concerning the reading[-authorization]: [the text] *mChod thabs*, the continuous practice of the Seven Mothers, [a work with the title] *sNgon skal ma*, which is known to have been composed by the noble Ma-bdun-pa, and also [the text dealing with] the invitation [of the goddesses] to him, the praises of offering and so forth, they have [all] been compiled according to old scriptures and [are known as] *Ma mo bdun gyi gcig tu sgril ba* [*ma rig mun sel sgron me*]. The [transmission

489.1; for the role of Byang-bdag bKra-shis stobs-rgyal in the codification of the collection of medical texts, see *ibid.*, pp. 479.5–480.1. In this line of transmission stood also Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku; see Chos-kyi dbang-phyug: *Zab rgyas chos tshul rgya mtsho las / rang skal du ji ltar thob pa'i yi ge*, fols. 97b/2–100a/4. It is mentioned in this passage that rDor-'bum Chos-kyi grags-pa had recovered paper scrolls in both the vihāras of Byams-pa sprin and sPra-dun rtse.

of the] lineage of [this work] together with the [work called] *mChod phreng rgyas pa*, a compilation of sNgags-'chang 'Gyur-med rnam-rgyal, [it is] just like the lineage of the initiations above: from sNgags-'chang 'Gyur-med rnam-rgyal to the presence of the Noble One (= 'Phrin-las bdud-'joms) [and] from him [received by me].¹⁴

The ritual texts devoted to the cult of the Seven Ma-mo Sisters in the region of Mang-yul Gung-thang thus included personal writings of Ma-bdun-pa and this illustrates the fact that the yogin of the 'Brug-pa bKa'-brgyud-pa school was not only bearing the name of the main deity but was active in propagating the cult of the mother goddesses in the region. Once again the work with the title *mChod gzhung* turns up as the central liturgical text of the tradition, which we have already encountered as the literary source for the iconography of individual deities. Although most of the early teachers of this lineage remain still to be identified it becomes evident that the transmission had become associated with the Gur family particularly at the time of sNgags-'chang Che-mchog rdo-rje, the great exponent of the Gur-rigs mDo-chen tradition in the 16th century.

The mDo-chen bKa'-brgyud-pa

It is possible to reconstruct the early history of this sub-branch of the 'Brug-pa bKa'-brgyud-pa school and its later transmission through the chronicle written by Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku in the year 1815. According to the colophon it had been composed with the intention to produce a supplement

¹⁴ This transmission is contained in the bKa'-ma section of the records of teachings received by Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku; see Chos-kyi dbang-phyug (as in note 13), fol. 45a/5–b/6 (*rdo rje ma mo bdun gyi bka' gtad gtor dbang sngon du 'gro ba'i rjes 'brel du rigs kyi bsrung ma rdo rje legs ldan ma'i bka' gtad kyang nos pa'i brgyud pa ni / gu ru thod phreng rtsal / dmar zhabs ras pa / ston chen ras pa / gsang sngags chos rgyal / bla ma śākya / ke te phug pa / kun bzang 'byung gnas / bsod nams seng ge / chos grub bzang po / sngags 'chang che mchog rdo rje / chos dbang rdo rje / nam mkha' lhun grub / nam mkha' seng ge / rig 'dzin 'gyur med rnam rgyal / rje karma bdud 'joms / des bdag la'o // lung la / ma mo bdun gyi rgyun khyer mchod thabs rje ma bdun pa chen pos mdzad par grags pa'i sngon skal ma dang / yang de nyid la spyan 'dren mchod bstod sogs yig rnying liar sbyar te ma mo bdun gyi mchod gzhung gcig tu sgril ba / sngags 'chang 'gyur med rnam rgyal gyi khrigs su mdzad pa'i mchod 'phreng rgyas pa dang bcas pa'i brgyud pa ni / gong gi dbang brgyud lta la / sngags 'chang 'gyur med rnam rgyal nas / rje'i zhabs / des so). For the position of dMar-zhabs ras-pa in the transmission lineage of the cycle devoted to rituals of the bsTan-ma bcu-gnyis goddesses according to the findings of Gu-ru Chos-kyi dbang-phyug, see the text of the Fifth Dalai Bla-ma (as in note 13), p. 757.2. Ma-bdun-pa is also regarded as one of the disciples of Gu-ru Chos-kyi dbang-phyug; see Translation, note 3. The work *Ma mo bdun gyi mchod gzhung gcig tu sgril ba ma rig mun sel* was also transmitted separately by members of the Gur family; see Appendix II: F.8.d.*

to a *mDo chen bka' brgyud gser 'phreng*, i.e. a lineage history called “Golden Rosary” (*gser 'phreng*), a literary genre especially popular among authors of the bKa'-brgyud-pa school. This supplement to a text on the mDo-chen bKa'-brgyud-pa lineage is at the same time a history of the Gur family and predates the chronicle on the history and cult of the Seven Vajra Sisters by eight years; it is one of three works of Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku which are according to their titles “genealogical records” (*gdung rabs*), all of which were composed in the period between 1812 and 1820. It is, however, not the earliest text of this author dealing with the Gur-rigs mDo-chen tradition or the cult of the *Ma-mo mched-bdun*; already in 1796, at the age of twenty-one, he had set down a work devoted to the offering rituals for rDo-rje Legs-ldan-ma, the female protector of the vihāra of Byams-pa sprin.¹⁵

The *mDo chen bka' brgyud gser 'phreng*, i.e. the work serving as the starting point for the chronicle, is said to have been an old scripture comprising two volumes; it is mentioned on three occasions in the chronicle of Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku (and once in the colophon of the text). The first reference occurs at the end of the first part after introducing the “Upper” and the “Lower” branches of the 'Brug-pa bKa'-brgyud-pa school; there it is stated that the lineage of Ma-bdun-pa, although being part of the “Upper” branch, also belonged to the “Lower” branch, which implies that the founder of the lineage had studied both with rGod-tshang-pa mGon-po rdo-rje and Lo-ras-pa dBang-phyug brtson-'grus. The reader is then advised to consult the *mDo chen bka' brgyud gser 'phreng* for biographical details concerning the masters up to Ma-bdun-pa. The remaining part of the chronicle is structured in two main sections: the transmission from Ma-bdun-pa onwards and the transmission starting with Gur-ston lHun-grub bkra-shis, i.e. the history of the Gur family.

At the end of the first of these two sections, the *mDo chen bka' brgyud gser 'phreng* is once again mentioned. This time the reference occurs after the presentation of the biographies of Ma-bdun-pa and his two disciples gDan-sa Rin-chen-pa and Chos-rje ston-pa, the latter one having studied with both Ma-bdun-pa and gDan-sa Rin-chen-pa. As stated by Brag-dkar rta-so

¹⁵ For the three genealogical records that Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku produced between 1812 and 1820, see Ehrhard (2004a:120). An overview of the work describing the history of the descendants of Rig-'dzin bsTan-gnyis gling-pa, the family to which Chos-kyi dbang-phyug was affiliated, is given in Ehrhard (2007a:40–45). The text on the offering rituals for rDo-rje Legs-ldan-ma is to be found in vol. 7 of his collected writings, containing works on Buddhist rituals. It is followed by another text on the subject of offering rituals, in this case for the Twelve Female [Protectors of the] Doctrine; see Ehrhard (2004a:550). The latter work, written in 1792, seems to be the earliest literary composition of Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku.

sPrul-sku, the old scripture of the *mDo chen bka' brgyud gser 'phreng* continued the history of this sub-branch of the sTod-'brug tradition with biographical accounts of four teachers called Bla-ma Byang-pa, Bla-ma Chos-kyi seng-ge, Bla-ma Chos-kyi rgyal-mtshan and Bya-btang Śākya dpal. These religious masters are nevertheless not treated in any great detail, as their succession did not constitute a “real lineage” (*brgyud pa dngos*), i.e. a consecutive transmission of the mDo-chen bKa'-brgyud-pa teachings. Instead this lineage is described as passing through three other teachers, namely Sangs-rgyas dbon-po, bSod-nams dbang-phyug and bSod-nams snying-po. This particular transmission is characterized as a “teaching lineage” (*chos brgyud*) in contrast to a transmission as continued by members of a family tradition (like in the case of the Gur family). There were no written sources available on the lives of the three last mentioned teachers, and Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku only observes that according to some records of teachings received bSod-nams snying-po had belonged to the monastery of Nub-dgon, located in the northern part of Gung-thang. In his own records he also lists the latter lineage as the authentic transmission of the doctrines of the mDo-chen bKa'-brgyud-pa lineage.¹⁶

What was the reason for preferring the latter transmission to the former, and why was it regarded as the authentic lineage? Here one has to take into account that the Māyājāla or *sGyu 'phrul* cycle of the Mahāyoga teachings was part of the doctrinal system of the lineage of the mDo-chen bKa'-brgyud-pa since the times of their founder Ma-bdun-pa. It is known that he had studied the teachings of the rNying-ma-pa school from an early age onwards under a teacher called Gar-ston Sangs-rgyas and latter received doctrines of the Early Translations as well from one gSang-sngags sdong-po. Also his immediate disciples gDan-sa Rin-chen-pa and Chos-rje ston-pa were recipients of rNying-ma-pa doctrines from further masters.

At a later point in time the teachers Sangs-rgyas dbon-po, bSod-nams dbang-phyug and bSod-nams snying-po had obviously been the main transmitters and codifiers of these “spoken teachings” (*bka' ma*) ascribed to Padmasambhava, and this must have contributed to the fact that their lineage had become the preferred one. The records of teachings received by Brag-

¹⁶ See the text of Chos-kyi dbang-phyug (as in note 13), fol. 250a/3–6 (*stod 'brug ma bdun bka' brgyud nas brgyud pa ni / rje rgya ras yan thog ma'i brgyud pa bzhin la / de no lo rgod rnams gnyis / gnyis kas ma bdun ras chen / gdan sa rin po che / byin rlabs rdo rje [= chos rje ston pa] / sangs rgyas dbon / bsod nams dbang phyug / bson nams snying po / gur ston lhun grub bkra shis / sngags 'chang mgon po dpal / kun dga' gzi brjid / che mchog rdo rje / dkon mchog rdo rje / nam mkha' lhun grub / nam mkha' seng ge / nor bu bde chen / bstan pa'i nor bu / rgyal sras seng ge / rig 'dzin rje man 'dra'o*). For this transmission and the monastery Nub-dgon in Gung-thang, compare Translation, note 12.

dkar rta-so sPrul-sku offer a glimpse into the early stage of this particular transmission—with two doctrinal systems already in existence at the time of Ma-bdun-pa—and into the latter stage, when the relevant text books were composed by teachers like the aforementioned bSod-nams snying-po:

The Māyājāla [cycle (i.e. stages) of] the preparation and the entering [into the maṇḍala], in accordance with a maṇḍala liturgy of Mahā-cārya Padma[sambhava] it was supported by a maṇḍala with a hundred pedals and based [on the text] *dBang chog tshogs gnyis chu rgyun ma* composed by Chos-rje bSod-nams snying-po, who had condensed the two systems of the text book made by the scholar gSang-sngags sdong-po and the ritual practice of the great Gar-ston rTogs-ldan, [i.e.] the ritual practice of the initiation of the uninterrupted blessing of the excellent doctrine of the noble Ma-bdun-pa, and the textbooks which conferred the uninterrupted stream of the succession of empowermentments from Bla-ma Zu-lung-pa, mKhas-btsun dKon[-mchog] tshul[-khrims], Chos-rje Byin-rlabs rdo-rje (= Chos-rje ston-pa) and so forth.¹⁷

The mDo-chen bKa'-brgyud-pa can thus be regarded as a sub-branch of the 'Brug-pa bKa'-brgyud-pa lineage deeply influenced since its inception in the 13th century by the spoken teaching and treasure traditions of the rNying-ma-pa school. It flourished in the region of Mang-yul Gung-thang and the founding of its different monasteries and hermitages during the initial and later phase of its spread are well-covered in the chronicle of Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku. His main literary source for the early history, the *mDo chen bka' brgyud gser 'phreng*, is mentioned in the text for a third time at the end of the biography of Gur-ston lHun-grub bkra-shis, i.e. the first representative of the Gur family, and he advises the reader once again to consult this work for further information. As the two volumes of the old scripture dealing with the mDo-chen bKa'-brgyud-pa have survived it is possible to

¹⁷ See the text of Chos-kyi dbang-phyug (as in note 13), fol. 25a/6–b/4 (*slob dpon chen po padmas mdzad pa'i dkyil chog dang mthun par / mkhas pa gsang sngags sdong po'i mdzad pa'i yig cha / gar ston rtogs ldan chen po'i phyag len te lugs gnyis dang / rje ma bdun pa'i bstan rab brgyud pa'i byin rlabs zam ma chad pa'i dbang gi phyag len / dang bla ma zu lung pa dang / mkhas btsun dkon tshul chos rje byin rlabs rdo rje sogs nas rim par dbang gi chu bo rgyud ma chad par bskur tshul gyi yig cha rnam phyogs gcig tu bsdu pa chos rje bsod nams snying pos mdzad pa'i dbang chog tshogs gnyis chu rgyu ma'i steng nas ras bris kyi dkyil 'khor 'dab ma brgya ldan ra rten nas [= brten nas] sia gon dang 'jug pa sgyu 'phrul). For the transmission of the reading[-authorization], compare *ibid.*, fols. 26b/2–27b/6. Both, gSang-sngags sdong-po and Gar-ston rTogs-ldan, were teachers of Ma-bdun-pa; see Translation, note 3. dKon[-mchog] tshul[-khrims], a native of Zur-mtsho, was the main teacher of Chos-rje ston-pa in the bKa'-ma transmission; see Translation, note 10.*

follow his advice and obtain an overview of the masters of the lineage up to and including Gur-ston lHun-grub bkra-shis (see Appendix I).

The Gur Family

The section of the chronicle which is a genealogical account, starts with Gur-ston lHun-grub bkra-shis and a short interlinear gloss on the names “Gur” and “mDo-chen”. It is then explained that both designations derive from toponyms in the region of Mang-yul Gung-thang. The two relevant places—Gur-phu in Mang-tsha and mDo-bo-che in Phu-lag—had already been noted earlier in the text, namely in the sketch of the life of Ma-bdun-pa; they are contained in the list of sites where the master had founded places for his spiritual practices, and especially mDo-bo-che became known as the major seat of this lineage in the domain of the Gung-thang rulers. Concerning the genealogy of the Gur family it is stated in the chronicle that this clan was called ’Ur-rtsa and had originally come from sTod, i.e. Western Tibet.

This information is also found in the autobiography of Tshe-dbang ’Chi-med mgon-po (1755–1808), Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku’s teacher, who is the last member of the family treated in greater detail in the chronicle. His description of the origins and early representatives of the family is quoted in the following:

[My] family [is] a noble one. The bone (i.e. the paternal lineage) [is] ’Ur-rtsa [from] Western Tibet. After the specific [branch of that family] had settled at [the place of] the human bone (i.e. the paternal ancestors), [it] also came to be known as the one from the upper part of the tent [valley]. From the lineage of these [came forth] the teacher Chos[-kyi] seng-ge, Chos-rgyal ye-shes dar, the great Gur-ston lHun-grub bkra-shis and so forth: one should know this from the [collection of] biographies of the teachers of the mDo-chen [bKa’-brgyud-pa] lineage, which is being written by me separately.¹⁸

¹⁸ See Chos-kyi dbang-phyug: *Gur gyi sngags ban tshe dbang ’chi med mgon po’i rang tshul chu babs su brjod pa*, p. 15.3–5 (*rigs ni rje rigs rus ni stod ’ur rtsa / bye brag pa mi rus la jag pa las / gur phu pa zhes kyang ni grags pa ste / de dag brgyud las bla ma chos seng ge dang / chos rgyal ye shes dar dang gur ston che / lhun grun bkra shis la sogs zhis par ni / kho bos mdo chen bla brgyud rnam thar zhig / zur du ’bri bar las shes shing*). If one identified the said Bla-ma Chos-kyi seng-ge with the teacher of the same name referred to in the *mDo chen bka’ brgyud gser phreng*, this person would be another early member of the Gur family holding teaching traditions of the mDo-chen bKa’-brgyud-pa. For the studies of Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku under Tshe-dbang ’Chi-med mgon-po and his involvement in the composition of the latter’s autobiography in the year 1803, see Ehrhard (2004a:92–97 & 119)

As is obvious from the colophon of the chronicle of Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku, his teacher Tshe-dbang 'Chi-med mgon-po had indeed the intention to compose an updated version of the *mDo chen bka' brgyud gser 'phreng* but was unable to bring the project to completion. Such an appendix to the earlier work was only finished seven years after the death of Tshe-dbang 'Chi-med mgon-po in form of the chronicle of his disciple.

After presenting the main events from the life of his teacher, Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku adds in a final note that apart from the persons described in his genealogical account there also existed further members of the Gur family. Especially mentioned are one Gur-ston dPal-mdzes [rgyal-mtshan] (12th/13th cent.)—a contemporary of Ma-bdun-pa—and one 'Chi-med 'od-zer (1574–1661) as well as the latter's son rGyal-dbang seng-ge (b. 1628). An interlinear gloss refers the reader to an old scripture concerning the first teacher, which might have been a chronicle of that particular line of the Gur family. Although this literary source has not yet surfaced we do possess the biography of 'Chi-med 'od-zer, written by his son rGyal-dbang seng-ge. In its introduction one finds a note on the life of dPal-mdzes [rgyal-mtshan] accompanied by an etymology of the title attached to his name:

[He] who is called Gur-ston dPal-mdzes rgyal-mtshan, as it was said by the so-called saying: “A teacher will appear [living within] the fences of a tent,” the name arose, [and he was] a man descending from that [family]. From a young age on he had been ordained and had gone many times to India, China and so forth; he had touched the feet of many learned [and] realized ones. And as he was trained in all the new [and] old sūtras [and] mantras he became a ruler of all knowledge, and countless doors of meditative absorption were born [in him]. His wondrous deeds, including foreknowledge and miraculous appearances, cannot be measured and he was accepted as a manifestation of Padmasambhava. The Jñānaḍākinī prophesied [the place of] rDzong-sgo with the words: “Your disciples, they will exist on the neck [mountain] similar to the open mouth of a rocky horse!” And further: “Because your lineage will [once] have arrived [there] for the benefit of beings, increase the family line!” [These are] in short the countless acts of his benefiting disciples, at length [they are] clear in his biography.¹⁹

¹⁹ See rGyal-dbang seng-ge: *Bya btang 'od zer rgya mtsho'i rnam thar*, fol. 3a/1–b/2 (*gur ston dpal mdzes rgyal mtshan bya ba / gur rib pa'i ston pa zbig yong ba 'dug zhes grags pas de skad du mtshan chags pa de las rgyud pa mi / de yang g.yon nu [= gzhon nu] nas rab tu byung ba zhing / rgya gar nag sogs mang por byon / paṅ grub mang po'i zhabts la btugs shing / mdo sngags gsar rnying kun la sbyangs pas / mkhyen pa'i mnga' bdag tu gyur zhing / ting nge 'dzin gyi sgo dpag tu med pa 'khrungs te / mngon shes rdzu 'phrul sogs ngo mtshar pa'i mdzad*

Although this explanation of the origin of the name of “Gur” does not point straight to a toponym, it does clarify that the ancestors of that family had been associated with the nomadic pastures of Gung-thang and had chosen sites for their spiritual practices during the same period when Ma-bdun-pa had founded his hermitages in the kingdom. But it was only in the generation following Gur-ston lHun-grub bkra-shis, namely in the 15th century, that the Gur family became the main holder of the teaching lineage of the mDo-chen bKa’-brgyud-pa.

The central part of the chronicle of Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku presents an overview of the successive generations, mainly based on biographical literature, but also including prayers, prophecies and praises for individual masters available to the author. In the 17th century the family diverged into two patrilineal branches, one residing mainly in the valley of La-[l]de[bs], to the south-east of sKyid-grong, and one in [b]Tsum, presently located in the Nepalese Himalayas in the vicinity of Nub-ris; in the latter region one can still witness today the presence of the teaching tradition of Ma-bdun-pa, while the former has still to be investigated in this respect. The complete genealogy of the Gur family as described in the chronicle can be represented in a chart; it covers a dozen generations (see chart on p. 32 below).²⁰

The 17th century was the time when Nor-bu bde-chen, who was described by Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku as the greatest Buddhist master of the family after Gur-ston lHun-grub bkra-shis, flourished. It was during that period in the history of Tibetan Buddhism when the treasure teachings of

*pa ni dpag gis mi lang shing / gu ru padma'i sprul par zhal gyis bzhes pa la / ye shes kyi mkha' gros khyed gyi gdul bya brag rta'i kha gdams pa [= gdangs pa] 'dra ba'i mgul na yod ces rdzong sgo lung bstan pa dang / gzhan yang der khyod kyi brgyud pa 'gro don yongs pas / rigs rgyud spel cig / ces pa dang mdor na gdul bya mtha' yas pa'i don mdzad pa sogs / rgyas par nam thar du gsal zhing). For further details concerning dPal-mdzes [rgyal-mtshan] and this line of the Gur family, see Translation, note 49. rGyal-dbang seng-ge was also known under the name Chos-rje rDzong-pa as can be seen from several entries in the biography of the treasurer-discoverer Rig-'dzin Gar-dbang rdo-rje (1640–1685). He is also the author of the latter's biography; see rGyal-dbang seng-ge: *sPrul sku rig 'dzin chen po gar dbang rdo rje snying po'i phyi'i nam par thar pa*, pp. 81.5–82.4.*

²⁰ For two voluminous works on the Māyājāla cycle of the Gur-rigs mDo-chen tradition as preserved in Nyi-lhod in [b]Tsum, see *gSang ba sgyu 'phrul zhi khro'i rgyud*, 522 fols., manuscript (= NGMPP reel-no. L 493/12–L 494/1), and *sGyu 'phrul zhi khro'i dbang dang se ba'i skor dang rgyud (= brgyud) rim lo rgyus*, 645 fols., manuscript (= NGMPP reel-no. L 492/2–L 495/1). A recent publication on the ritual dances of the Māyājāla cycle is *gSang ba sgyu 'phrul zhi khro gnyis kyi rtsa 'chams byung khung lo rgyus rtsa tshig bcas go gsal du bkod pa*, 28 pp. (Kathmandu: Chum Nile Labrang, n.d.) For preliminary remarks on the toponyms of the La-[l]de[bs] and other sub-dialects of the valley, see Huber (2005:6–8).

the rNying-ma-pa school were in high esteem and received official support from the newly founded dGa'-ldan pho-brang government in Central Tibet. In the same way as other important teachers of that period Nor-bu bde-chen has left detailed accounts of the different transmissions he had received, and it is thus possible to document the history of the Gur-rigs mDo-chen tradition during his floruit and the next two generations in greater detail (see Appendix II).²¹

Looking at the Buddhist genealogies as they are recorded in the chronicles of the mDo-chen bKa'-brgyud-pa, it is obvious that lineage-based transmissions were gradually supplanted by family-based transmissions and thus survived in the remote Himalayan valleys to the south, while the importance of the original seat of the tradition in the northern planes of Gung-thang had faded away. In the earlier as well as the later phases of its development it is possible to observe a strong involvement of the individual members with different doctrinal systems of the rNying-ma-pa school. This is particularly true for Tshe-dbang 'Chi-med mgon-po, the last member of the Gur family, who has left a strong imprint on this tradition from south-western Tibet.

²¹ Detailed records of teachings received during the 17th century are available, for example, in the case of the Sa-skyapa master A-mes-zhabs Ngag-dbang Kun-dga' bsod-nams (1597–1659) and the Fifth Dalai Bla-ma Ngag-dbang Blo-bzang rgya-mtsho; for these records and their sources, see Sobisch (2007:33–64) and Ehrhard (in press b), respectively. Compare also *Gong dkar bla ma 'phrin las rnam rgyal gyi gsan yig*, 415 pp. ([Kathmandu]: rGyal-yongs sa-chen dpe-skrun khang, 2008) for the records of teachings received of yet another scholar of the 17th century that recently became available.

Gur-ston lHun-grub bkra-shis

Kun-dga' gzi-brjid

Che-mchog-pa

Don-yod rdo-rje

Nam-mkha' lhun-grub

'Jigs-bral

Thon-smyon

Nam-mkha' seng-ge

rGyal-ntshan

dKon-mchog lhun-grub

Nor-bu bde-chen (b. 1617)

Gar-dbang

Chos-dbang

'Gyur-med gSang-sngags

bDud-'dul rdo-rje

(1648–1672)

bSod-nams rgyal-mo

dPal bzang-po

'Gyur-med 'Phrin-las

bsTan-'dzin

don-grub

Nor-bu

bsTan-pa'i nor-bu

rGyal-sras seng-ge

(d. 1752)

'Dzam-gling-pa Blo-gros chos-'phel (1665–1728)

Nam-mkha' lhun-grub

bDud-'dul bsKal-bzang

dbang-phyug

rnam-rgyal

rgya-mtsho

(1714–1782)

'Gyur-med rnam-rgyal

dPal-mgon

Chos-dbang

Ngag-dbang ye-shes (1700–1760)

O-rgyan

Blo-bzang nyi-ma

Legs-grub bzang-po

bDe-chen bzang-po

'Chi-med mgon-po (1755–1807)

Nor-bu bde-chen: Appendix II (A, D & F)

rGyal-sras seng-ge: Appendix II (B, E & G)

Padma rgya-mtsho: Appendix II (C)

'Gyur-med rgya-mtsho

Part Two

dPal ldan gur rigs mdo chen brgyud pa'i lo rgyus nyung ngu'i ngag
gi brjod pa padma rā ga'i¹ phreng ba zhes bya ba bzhugs so //

[1b] om̄ sva sti /

dpal ldan gur rigs mdo chen brgyud pa'i bla rabs kyi lo rgyus nyung ngu'i
ngag gi gtam du bya ba ngo mtshar padma rā ga'i phreng ba zhes bya ba
grub dang / rig pa 'dzin pa'i tshogs kyi zhabs kyi padmo la yan lag mchog gis
mngon par btud de phyag 'tshal zhing skyabs su mchi'o /

rgyu med par yang 'gro la gnyen gshin rgyal rnam s thugs rje'i nyin
mor byed / gang 'dul 'dul bya'i yid mkhar² rol bas 'gro rgyud las nyon
mun pa'i dmag / mthar bcoms phan bde'i snang ba rab gsal snying
po'i ring lugs 'dab brgya'i tshal / rgyas mdzad dpal ldan gur rigs mdo
chen brgyud pa'i 'phreng ba bsngags par 'os /

e ma rgyal bstan³ nor bu'i tog /
bsgrub [2a] brgyud rgyal mtshan rtser bsgrengs bas⁴ /
'gro la phan dang bde ba'i char /
kun tu 'bebs mdzad de kun rgyal /

phyogs rer lhung min lung rtogs kyi /
chos tshul kun 'dzin khyad par du /
snying po'i ring⁵ lugs⁶ gsal byed mgon /
bka' brgyud gser gyi 'phreng⁷ bar grags /

snga 'gyur zab don nyin byed dbang /
bshad grub snang ba'i gter 'dzin pa /
sngon byon gur rigs dam pa yi /
skyes mchog rim brgyud tshar du dngar⁸ /

de lta'i phul byung yon tan gtam /
mos dge'i dpal yon bskyed byed cing /
kun dga'i skyes su 'os snyam⁹ 'dir /
go bde'i ngag gi yi ger spel /

[1]

de la 'dir stobs cu mnga' ba'i rgyal ba sras bcas kyi thugs rje'i rang gzugs
'phags pa 'jig rten dbang phyug gi rang dbang [2b] gi gdul bya'i zhing

Scribal errors have been corrected, and rejected forms are given in footnotes.

¹ ra ka'i ² khar ³ bsten ⁴ bsgreng bas ⁵ add: ring ⁶ lug ⁷ 'phreng ba ⁸ mtshar du mngar
⁹ snyams

kham ri kha ba can gyi ljongs 'dir rgyal ba nyi ma'i gnyen gyi lung rtogs bstan pa rin po che yongs su gsal bar mdzad pa'i bstan 'dzin ris su ma chad pa'i skyes¹⁰ chen dam pa rgyu skar gyi grangs gis kyang gzhal du med pa ji snyed zhig byon pa'i nang nas snga 'gyur gsang chen snying po'i ring lugs kyi chu bo chen po dang / sgrub rgyud rin chen gser gyi 'phreng ba'i bshad bsgrub kyi chu bo chen po chig 'dres su bzhugs zhing khyad par kun bzang rdo rje 'chang gis gsung gi gsang ba zab pa las kyang che zab pa'i rgyud sde rin po che rnam kyi nang tshan¹¹ tantra¹² sde bco brgyad kyi nang nas snying po rmad du byung ba sgyu phrul dra ba'i smin grol man ngag gi rgyun gsang ba'i bdag pa rdo rje 'dzin nas bzung¹³ zhal nas zhal snyan¹⁴ du brgyud pa bar ma chad par bzhugs pa de'i brgyud pa'i byung khung dang / bka' bab kyi tshul rnam 'dir yi ge'i 'jigs pas ma bkod la rgyas par mdo sgyu sems gsum gyi brgyud pa'i lo rgyus gzhan¹⁵ du gsal ba dang / bye brag sgrub rgyud kyi ring lugs bka' brgyud pa zhes 'jig rten du nyi zla ltar grags pa¹⁶ 'di la rdo rje 'chang nas rim par brgyud de 'gro ba'i mgon po gtsang pa rgya ras pa'i bar byon pa'i rnam par thar pa'i tshul [3a] zhib pa ni bka' brgyud spyir grags pa ltar yin la / rje rgya ras par slob ma snga phyi bar gsum du bgrang las 'das pa byon pa stod¹⁷ 'brug / smad 'brug / bar 'brug gsum du phye ba'i dang po rgyal ba rgod tshang pa¹⁸ mgon po rdo rje nas brgyud par stod 'brug tu grags zhing / rje rgod tshang pa'i¹⁹ thugs sras rnam kyi nang tshan rgyal ba ma bdun ras chen nyid yin ste / rje des 'gro mgon u ri pa'am rgyal ba lo ras zhabs²⁰ la'ang thug pas smad 'brug gi brgyud pa'ang 'dres phyir de yan gyi rnam²¹ par thar pa ni mdo chen bka' brgyud gser 'phreng du grags pa'i lo rgyus yig rnying zur du gsal ba las ltogs par bya la / 'dir brgyud pa 'di kyi dang po rje ma bdun ras chen nas rim par brgyud pa'i chos rgyud dang / gur ston lhun grub bkra shis nas rim par gur rigs brgyud pa'i rnam²² thar che long tsam zhig 'god par bya ste //

[II]

[a]

de la rgyal ba ma bdun ras chen nam / mtshan gzhan rnal 'byor chos ldan du grags par de nyid sku bltams pa'i yul ni / gtsang nyang stod rgya gar gling chung / de'i nang tshan²³ nyang stod gang gyi shel²⁴ mkhar zhes bya bar [3b] gdung gar / rigs ni sngags / yab jo sras bal po phyug bya ba dang / yum zab mo dge ma gnyis kyi sras su 'khrungs²⁵ / dgung lo bcu gcig bzhes pa na bla ma rtogs ldan chen po gar ston sangs rgyas dang mjal / dbu skra bcad cing mtshan rnal 'byor chos ldan du gsol / lo bcu drug gi bar du bsnyen te gsang sngags gsar rnying gi rgyud²⁶gzhung dbang lung man ngag mtha' yas pa gsan

¹⁰ skyed ¹¹ mtshan ¹² tantran ¹³ gzung ¹⁴ snyen ¹⁵ bzhan ¹⁶ brag pa ¹⁷ stad ¹⁸ tshangs pa ¹⁹ tshangs pa ²⁰ zhab ²¹ rnam ²² rnam ²³ mtshan ²⁴ shes ²⁵ 'khrung ²⁶ brgyud

/ 'og 'don gyi snyun gzhi byung bar lo gcig sku mtshams bcad te / rdo rje
 gtum po bsnyen pas zhal gzigs zhing bsnyun las grol / snga 'gyur rnying ma'i
 mkhas pa chen po gsang sngags sdong po / smad 'brug gi chu 'go rgyal ba lo
 ras pa'am chos rje u ri pa / khro phu lo tsa ba / 'jam mgon sa skya pañḍi ta /
 gter ston gu ru chos dbang / grub thob 'phags pa sogs mkhas grub mang du
 mjal zhing gdams gsan²⁷ / la stod ding ri na yar byon / gnya' nang tshong
 'dus kyi phu bde chen²⁸ steng du rje rgod tshang pa²⁹ dang mjal / thugs dam
 bcu gnyis go cha dang bcu gsum gyi chos 'dres gsan³⁰ te bal yul skor nas
 skyid grong du byon / bsod snyoms mdzad pas phol ra mtshan cig gi gseb
 na³¹ jo mo³² rgan mo zhig [4a] byung ba de na re / ya gi na dngos grub kyi
 rdzas cig rdog pas de blang na yongs zer nas / tshol du byon pas ri gdong cig
 gi sna la phug pa nag ha re yod pa gzigs nas der byon te / tshogs kyi 'khor lo
 mdzad pas thugs dam 'phel zhing thugs shin tu nyams 'ur ba la sogs pa'i
 gnas chen gyi ltas du ma gzigs pa ni ma bdun phug pa yin la / der bsgrub pa
 la yun bzhugs pa las mtshan yang ma bdun par grags so / gnas der slob dpon
 chen po'i zhal gzigs / skabs cig bud med nag mo chen mo cig byung nas nga
 su yin ngo shes sam zer ba la / mi shes gsung pas / khyod dang nga gnyis gu
 ru dus su mched grogs yin te / shing³³ nag³⁴ rta ru zhon pa'i mkha' 'gro ma
 dred kyi gdong pa³⁵ can bya ba yin zer nas chos skyongs ba'i srungs mar dam
 la thogs pa rdo rje ma bdun ma nyid te / grub gzhung las / rdo rje ma bdun
 dred gdong mi spags gyon / zhes gsung pa ltar / gong du lung ston pa'i
 btsun ma de yang 'di kho nar nges la / brgyud pa 'di'i rigs bsrung gi gtso bor
 'dzin pa yang 'di man byung bar snang ngo / slar yang rgyal ba rgod tshang
 pa³⁶ chen po'i spyang sngar [4b] byon nas chos rje 'brug pa'i gdams pa dang
 rjes su gdams pa mtha' dag gsan cing thugs kyi sras dam par dbang bskur /
 rang mnyam³⁷ gyi bu chen brgyad kyi nang nas / snying rje rang dang
 mnyam pa'i ma bdun pa / zhes yong su grags / ling nga / sku lha / śrī gnam
 sding / lha gdong / shar sding / dkar ye³⁸ dpal gyi nags khrod sogs ri khrod
 nges med du mar bzhugs zhing bsgrub pa gtso bor mdzad / stong nyid
 snying rje'i rtsal rdzogs zhing 'khor 'das kyi rten 'brel thams cad la mnga'
 brnyes³⁹ te dben pa'i gnas rnams su sgoms chen gyi srol bstod / tshad med
 pa'i thugs rje chen pos gzhan phan rgya cher mdzad / sku tsh'e'i smad du sku
 thang tsum gyi bde bsgron / long phrang rin chen spungs pa / byang ge
 brang ze mkhar / mang tsha'i gur phu / gre zla'i nang khong dpal gyi ri /
 spang zhing gi lho nub thog ston sangs rgyas shar sgom / gung thang phu lag
 gi mdo bo che rnams su bsgrub grva btab cing 'khor lo gsum gyi sgo nas
 sgrub brgyud kyi bstan pa rgyas par mdzad pa'i mthar mdo bo che'i dben
 gnas su dgung lo drug bcu re brgyad pa dbyar zla tha chung gi tshes bcu

²⁷ gsen ²⁸ can ²⁹ tshangs pa ³⁰ gsen ³¹ bsen na ³² jo mu ³³ zhing ³⁴ na ³⁵ gdongs pa
³⁶ tshangs pa ³⁷ mnyams ³⁸ yang ³⁹ rnyes

dgu'i nub chos kyi dbyings spros pa dang bral ba'i dbyings su [5a] mya ngan las 'das te nam mkha' 'ja' gur gyi khyab⁴⁰ cing lha'i me tog gi char dang / gdung sha ri ram la sogs pa'i ring srel mang du byon pa sogs rnam par thar pa zhib par thugs sras gdan sa rin chen gyis mdzad pa las snying po bsdus te smos pa'o //

[b]

de nyid kyi thugs sras gdan sa rin chen pa ni / mang yul skyid grong gi yul phran sding bzang zhes bya bar yab se zhar 'bum me dang / yum tre mo sman ne zhes pa'i sras su 'khrungs / dgung lo bdun pa la rje ma bdun pa dang mjal zhing sngon gyi bag chags bzang po sad pa'i stobs⁴¹ kyis zhal mjal ba tsam⁴² gyis⁴³ snang ba gyur⁴⁴ / dgung lo bryad pa la yab yum la gsang nas ma bdun du byon te dbu skra bcad⁴⁵ mtshan 'phags pa dpal du gsol / rje ma bdun pas / nga'i dpe cha dum dum⁴⁶ 'di rnams kyi bdag po 'di la re ba yin / zhes gsung zhing / snod ldan gyi bu dam par gzigs te thugs kyi sras su lung bstan / dgung lo dgu par khrid bskyangs pas⁴⁷ spros bral gyi ye shes thugs la 'khrungs / gar phebs kyi phyag phyir 'brangs⁴⁸ nas dbang [5b] lung gdam pa'i chu bo ma lus pa gsan cing thugs nyams su bstar bas grol ba brnyes / dgung lo bcu dgu par mkhan po lho brag pa las bsnyen par rdzogs / nya tshal du glan lha rje chos seng dang / chos dar gnyis la mdo sgyu sems gsum gyi rgyud bshad man ngag mtha' dag rdzogs par gsan / 'og gdon gyi rtog zhib⁴⁹ bsnyun byung bar shar sding su bsgrub pa la bzhugs pa snga phyi sgril bas lo drug tu rdo rje gtum po'i bsnyen pa mthar⁵⁰ phyin par mdzad pas grol / shar sgom du lo gsum gyi nges pa can / gzhan yang nges med du bsgrub pa la bzhugs zhing / rje ma bdun pa gshegs nas gdan sa thams cad dar rgyas su bskyangs⁵¹ / lan 'de shar phu'i dben gnas su dgon pa btab par bkra shis sding zhes mtshan du gsol ba ding sang lcog rir 'bod pa dang / ku thang tsum stod du rin chen sgang / bul drud gyi dgon pa don grub gling / shar sgom dang nye bar be zho'i dgon pa rin chen gling sogs btab⁵² cing sgrub⁵³ grva btsugs / bshad sgrub las gsum gyis gdul bya'i tshogs dpag tu med pa phan bde'i lam bzang por bkod te mdzad pa mtha' ma gnas chen [6a] lcogs rir spre'u lo dbyar zla ra ba'i tshes gsum la chos kyi dbyings su bshegs so //

[c]

gdan sa rin chen 'phags pa dpal gyi thugs sras mnyam med chos rje ston pa ni / mang yul skyid grong gi mthil 'bar ba lha khang zhes par yab don grub rgyal mtshan dang / yum blon mo ye shes sde zhes bya ba gnyis kyi sras su 'khrungs⁵⁴ / rje ma bdun pa'i drung du byin brlabs zhus pa'i skabs / 'dis 'gro

⁴⁰ khyabs ⁴¹ stob ⁴² tsams ⁴³ gyi ⁴⁴ 'gyur ⁴⁵ gcad ⁴⁶ dom dum ⁴⁷ skyangs pas ⁴⁸ 'brens
⁴⁹ rtogs gzhi'i ⁵⁰ thar ⁵¹ skyangs ⁵² btab ⁵³ bsgrub ⁵⁴ 'khrung

ba la phan thogs pa cig yong ba yin no zhes lung bstan / dgung lo lnga pa la
 dbu skra bcad cing mtshan yang byin brlabs rdo rje zhes par gsol / dgung lo
 brgyad pa'i skabs bal yul 'phags pa shing kun dang / dpal gyi⁵⁵ chos 'khor
 lha sa rnams yab yum dang lhan du skor bar byon / snar thang pa mchims⁵⁶
 chen po nam mkha' grags pa dang dus mtshungs / rje ma bdun pa'i spyen
 sngar dgung lo bcu gsum par khrid bskyangs⁵⁷ / gnyug ma spros bral chos
 sku'i rang zhal rjen par gzigs / gsar rnying gi rgyud lung dbang khrid gdams
 pa du ma gsan⁵⁸ / rje ma bdun pa gshegs nas chos rje gdan [6b] sa pa'i drung
 du rab tu byung / gdams pa'i lhag ma rnams rdzogs par gsan cing zham
 ring⁵⁹ mdzad / gung thang yang thog tu mkhan po 'od zer dpal las dge tshul
 gyi bsblabs pa⁶⁰ bzhes zhing mkhan po sher pa dang ding ston las bsnyen par
 rdzogs / zur mtso'i mkhas btsun dkon tshul ba'i drung du snga 'gyur bka'
 ma'i skor mtha' yas pa dang gsar rnying gi gdams pa mang du gsan / gzhan
 yang mkhas grub dam pa mang po ris med par bsnyen te mdo sngags kyi
 gsan bsam rgya cher mdzad cing thos don dben pa'i ri khrod du mar 'dag
 sbyar gsung bcad lo gsum du ma dang / shar sgom dang be zho'i⁶¹ dgon pa
 gong 'og tu lo bdun sgrub pa la bzhugs / de nyid na gnas pa'i klu bdud ma
 zhis dam la btags nas rin chen gling mar grags / gdan sa pa zhi bar gshegs
 nas mdo bo che la sogs pa'i gdan sa thams cad bskyangs⁶² zhing lan 'de⁶³
 smad kyi ri ngogs su dgon pa btab [7a] par dpal ldan sding du grags so / rtag
 par sgom chen pho mo lnga brgya tsam dang / dus chen rnams su stong
 phrag lhag pa 'dus zhing zab rgyas kyi chos 'khor rgyun mi chad par skor ba
 dang 'gro don bsgrub pa zung 'jug tu mdzad te mthar dpal ldan sdings su
 bya lo rta ba zla ba'i tshes bcu bzahir zhi ba chos kyi dbyings su gshegs so //

[d]

skabs 'dir mdo chen bka' brgyud gser 'phreng yig rnying⁶⁴ su / chos rje ston
 pa nas / bla ma byang pa / bla ma chos seng / bla ma chos rgyal / bya btang
 śākya dpal [[*gloss*: byang gter ka dag lhun grub dang / rdor sems snying thig
 gi brgyud par bzhugs pa'i bya btang śākya dpal dang 'di gnyis mi gcig par
 shes dgos]] gyi rnam thar sogs 'dug rung brgyud pa dngos bstan du / chos rje
 ston pa nas sangs rgyas dbon po / bsod nams dbang phyug bsod nams snying
 po zhes 'byung bas gong gsal rnams dkyus su ma bkod cing / bsod nams
 snying po yan chos brgyud kho na las gdung rabs⁶⁵ min la bsod nams snying
 po ni bla ma gong ma dag gi gsan yig 'ga' zhis tu nub dgon pa yin tshul
 kyang gsung 'dug mod / gang ltar de gsum kyi rnam thar yi ger 'khod pa mi
 snang bas bri bar [7b] ma nus la /

⁵⁵ gyis ⁵⁶ 'chim ⁵⁷ skyangs ⁵⁸ bsan ⁵⁹ zhab ring ⁶⁰ slabs pa ⁶¹ ba zho'i ⁶² skyangs ⁶³ la
 lde ⁶⁴ rnyings ⁶⁵ gdung rab

[III]

[a]

gur ston lhun grub bkra shis nas gur rigs kyi mdo chen gdung brgyud [[*gloss*: de yang gur ni / gur phu dang / mdo chen ni / phu lag mdo chen ste dgon pa'i ming las mtshan du grags pa yin par go dgos]] rim par byung ba bzhin de'i tshul ni // phun sum tshogs pa'i dpal dang ldan pa'i stod 'ur rtsa zhes bya ba'i gdung las yab bsod nams 'dul le dang / yum chos skyongs skyid de bya ba'i sras su gur ston lhun grub⁶⁶ bkra shis nyid dpal khud gyi sa'i cha byang phugs zhes par 'khrungs / ding ri glang 'khor gyi bla ma zur khang pa zhes zhi byed brgyud pa'i mkhas pa chen po de nyid kyis / 'di la gang zag dam pa cig 'byung zhes lung bstan / chos rje bsod nams dbang phyug la dbu skra bcad / mtshan lhun grub⁶⁷ bkra shis su gsol / dgung lo bco lnga par phyag rgya chen po'i khrid bskyangs pas⁶⁸ spros bral gyi ye shes rjen par gzigs / kun mkhyen mus sradd pa dpal ldan seng ge las chig rdzogs mdzad / la shing mkhan po dbang she / gung thang 'om phug pa mkhas pa don grub shes rab / rtsa brgyad pa rdo rje seng ge / chos rje dbon seng pa / bya btang śākya dpal sogs mkhas grub mang du bsnyen te mdo sngags gsar rnying gi chos tshul rgya mtshor gsan⁶⁹ bsam mdzad / mdo bo cher gu ru'i lung zin chos [8a] rje bsod nams snying po las rang lugs bka' brygud gyi gdam skor mang du gsan / mdo bo che / long phrang / dkar ye / khra tums sogs dben gnas nges med du mar lo mang du dka' spyad⁷⁰ sgrub pa⁷¹ mdzad cing sgrub⁷² 'bras brnyed⁷³ / mnga' ris gung thang chos kyi rgyal po khri rgyal bsod nams lde dang mchod yon du 'brel / mdo bo che'i gdan sa mdzad / ma bdun pa'i khongs su gtogs pa'i⁷⁴ sde dgon thams cad kyi nyams pa gso zhing sgrub grva 'dzugs sogs dar rgyas shin tu 'phel bar mdzad cing mngon shes dang / rdzu 'phrul grub⁷⁵ rtags⁷⁶ bsam gyis⁷⁷ mi khyab pa bstan / chos skyong bka' bsrung bran bzhin tu bkol ba⁷⁸ dang / gdul bya 'phrin las rgya cher bskyangs⁷⁹ nas dpal mdo bo che'i dgon par zhi dbyings su gshegs so // 'di yan gyi rnam par thar pa rnam 'dir snying por⁸⁰ bsodus te rags tsam bkod pa yin la zhib tu rtogs par 'dod pa dag mdo chen bka' brgyud gser 'phreng gi yig rnying pod gnyis su gsal ba las lta bar bya'o //

[b]

gur ston lhun grub⁸¹ bkra shis nyid rten dge slong du bzhugs zhing sras byung tshul kyang rnam thar du mi gsal bas sngags 'chang mgon po dpal zhes [8b] lhun grub⁸² bkra shis kyi gcung po'am khu dbon chos sras su gyur pa zhig yin 'dra ba de nyid gyi rnam thar kyang zhib par cha ma 'tshal lo //

⁶⁶ lhun 'grub ⁶⁷ lhun 'grub ⁶⁸ skyangs pas ⁶⁹ bsan ⁷⁰ bka' dpyad ⁷¹ bsgrub pa ⁷² bsgrub
⁷³ brnyes ⁷⁴ btogs pa'i ⁷⁵ bsgrub ⁷⁶ brtags ⁷⁷ gyi ⁷⁸ khol ba ⁷⁹ skyangs ⁸⁰ snying po
⁸¹ lhun 'grub ⁸² lhun 'grub

[c]

de rjes chos rje kun dga' gzi brjid pa ni / yab yum 'khrungs⁸³ yul sogs rnam
 thar yig rnying zhig yod skad 'dug kyang kho bos sngar ma mthong zhing /
 'dir gsung rgyun⁸⁴ du grags pa sogs zur tsam zhig smos na / gung thang chos
 kyi rgyal po khri lha dbang rgyal mtshan dang dus mtshungs / sngags 'chang
 mgon po dpal / mnyam med lhun grub rin chen / drang so⁸⁵ sngags 'chang
 gter ston śākya bzang po / grub thob gtsang smyon he ru ka sogs ris med pa'i
 mkhas grub yongs 'dzin du mar mdo sngags gsar rnying gi smin grol man
 ngag mtha' yas pa gsan⁸⁶ cing gtsang smyon her u ka pa'i thugs sras bu chen
 rnams kyi nang nas mi phyed dad thob kyi bla chen drug gi gras su gyur /
 rtsa ba'i bzhugs gnas mdo bo che rang du bzhugs zhing lcogs ri bkra shis
 sdng sogs rong dgon rnams su'ang dbyar dgun gyi bzhugs bskyongs⁸⁷
 mdzad / 'di yan 'dul 'dzin dge slong sha stag⁸⁸ yin / sku tshe'i smad du sras
 sngags 'chang che mchog pa 'khrungs⁸⁹ / nam mkha' rdo rje sogs [9a] slob
 brgyud mang du kyang byung bar grags //

[d]

sngags 'chang che mchog pa ni / lcogs ri'i nye 'dabs⁹⁰ ding sang lhas chung
 du grags par 'khrungs⁹¹ / dgung lo gsum pa nas bklogs⁹² yig mkhyen / dgung
 lo brgyad pa'i skabs rdo la zhabs rjes gsal bar bzhag da lta'ang mjal rgyu yod
 par snang / yab chos rje kun dga' gzi brjid dang gter ston mchog ldan mgon
 po dang bstan gnyis gling pa / padma'i gling pa'i thugs sras dkar po kun dga'
 grags pa sogs bshes gnyen dam pa mang du bsten / sprul sku dri med kun
 dga'i gter byon thugs rje chen po ye shes 'od mchog gi smin grol gyi rgyun
 kyang 'di man byung / chos rgyal bdud 'dul mgon po lde dang dus
 mtshungs / gter ston mchog ldan mgon pos⁹³ byams sprin rlung gi kha non
 gyi zhig gšos⁹⁴ mnga' bdag gung thang rgyal por bskul par mdzad cing de'i
 do dam dang gnas 'dzin par sngags 'chang che mchog par dbang bskur /
 grub thob o rgyan pa'i bzhugs gnas shel ri dpal gyi nags ljongs⁹⁵ dang yang
 'dul sprul pa'i gtsung lag khang chen po byams pa sprin zung sbrel du
 bskyongs bar⁹⁶ mdzad [9b] cing tsum nyi lhod bla brang du bzhugs pa'i che
 mchog he ru ka'i gser sku khyad 'phags sogs bzhengs⁹⁷ / sgyu 'phrul gyi
 gdam ka⁹⁸ rgyas pa'i rnam bshad lung rigs⁹⁹ gter mdzod / gnas lung sogs
 mdzad / mnga' ris chos kyi rgyal pos dbu blar bskur / nub dgon pa byams pa
 chos rgyal mtshan gyis kyang¹⁰⁰ sgyu 'phrul skor 'ga' zhig gsan pa sogs slob
 brgyud kyang mang / gter ston bstan gnyis gling pas ri bo dpal 'bar nas zab
 gter bzhes skabs 'di nyid kyis¹⁰¹ slar yang bskul ma mdzad par gter bdag rgya
 gar ma khros pa'i 'khu¹⁰² ldog gi rkyen las lam du bsnyun gyis¹⁰³ btab te

⁸³ 'khrung ⁸⁴ khyun ⁸⁵ drang po ⁸⁶ bsen ⁸⁷ skyongs ⁸⁸ sha dag ⁸⁹ 'khrung ⁹⁰ 'dab
⁹¹ 'khrung ⁹² bklog ⁹³ mgon po'i ⁹⁴ bsos ⁹⁵ ljong ⁹⁶ skyongs bar ⁹⁷ gzheng ⁹⁸ gdab kha
⁹⁹ rig ¹⁰⁰ gyi'ang ¹⁰¹ kyi ¹⁰² khu ¹⁰³ gyi

dgun mdar¹⁰⁴ gshegs / rnam thar gyi bsod don gsol 'debs bu slob rnam kyis
 gter ston¹⁰⁵ chen por bskul ma zhus par tsal ba¹⁰⁶ ni /

dang po'i sangs rgyas gdod nas ma skyes pa /
 ye shes rang gsal gdod nas ma 'gag sku /
 dbyer med lhun grub¹⁰⁷ mngon 'gyur he ru kah /
 che mchog rdo rje'i zhabs la gsol ba 'debs /

yin lugs ka dag lta ba rjen par rtogs /
 ye shes rang gsal yi dam lha zhal mjal¹⁰⁸ /
 bsnyen bsgrub mthar phyin rtags dang mtshan ma thebs /
 sngags 'chang rgyal po khyod la gsol ba 'debs /

rdo rje theg pa'i [10a] skyes mchog du ma la /
 bskyed rdzogs gdams pa mang po'i zhun thar¹⁰⁹ bcad /
 mos gus ldan pas spyi bo'i thod bzhin brten¹¹⁰ /
 dbang rdzogs rgyal po khyod la gsol ba 'debs /

a ti yang gsang gdams pa'i snying po la /
 skal bar ldan pas dgongs pa¹¹¹ zab mo rtogs /
 yid dpyod¹¹² mos gus mngon sum rjen par gsal /
 zab gsal mnga' bdag khyod la gsol ba 'debs /

'byung bzhi mi rtag sgyu ma'i skur bstan dus /
 thim¹¹³ rim la sogs 'od gsal chen por rtogs /
 ha hu bzhi dang ha gcig 'chad pa'i dus /
 lnga ldan dgongs pa bzhugs la gsol ba 'debs /

ye shes lnga ldan dgongs pa'i klong bzhugs nas /
 mkha' la sprin bral me tog char ltar babs /
 'ja' 'od la sogs lha yi mchod tshogs bkram /
 kun bzang¹¹⁴ klong du bzhugs la gsol ba 'debs /

zhes sogs mdzad / de ma thag par gter ston gyi sras su sku'i skye ba gsal bar
 'khrungs pa¹¹⁵ mtshan tshe dbang bsod nams rgyal por grags¹¹⁶ / de'i skabs
 mdo chen pas 'dzin dbang gi dgon ma lag 'brel ba bdun yod pa ni / mdo
 chen phu lag dang sbrags pa / gur phu khra tums / shel ri byams sprin¹¹⁷ /
 shar sgom rin chen gling / shar sding shug khrod / lcog ri dpal sding / rin
 sgang long¹¹⁸ phrang [10b] bcas yod pa las shel ri byams sprin dang sbrags
 pa sku skyes bsod nams rgyal por bdag rkyen gsol skal du phul ba nas
 bzung¹¹⁹ byams sprin gter dbon gyi brgyud pa byung zhing gnas 'dzin gyi
 srol byung bar mngon //

¹⁰⁴ 'dar ¹⁰⁵ gton ¹⁰⁶ rtsal ba ¹⁰⁷ lhun 'grub ¹⁰⁸ 'jal ¹⁰⁹ mthar ¹¹⁰ bsten ¹¹¹ dgong pa
¹¹² spyod ¹¹³ thib ¹¹⁴ zang ¹¹⁵ 'khrung pa ¹¹⁶ grag ¹¹⁷ spran ¹¹⁸ lo ¹¹⁹ gzung

[e]

sngags 'chang che mchog rdo rje la sras don yod rdo rje dang / dkon mchog rdo rje gnyis la 'khrungs / mched gnyis kas yab sngags 'chang che mchog pa dang / bo dong pa'i mkhas grub rab 'byams pa dkon mchog bsam grub / gter ston mchog ldan mgon po dang / bstan¹²⁰ gnyis gling pa / 'bar lugs pa chos rje nam mkha' rdo rje sogs las zab chos mang du gsan¹²¹ / gcen don yod rdo rjes¹²² mdo bo che sogs bskyangs¹²³ cing gcung dkon mchog rdo rjes cog ri ma lag / bde sgron rin sgang sogs bskyangs so¹²⁴ //

[f]

sngags 'chang dkon mchog rdo rje sras nam mkha' lhun grub 'khrungs / dgung¹²⁵ lo brgyad pa nas bsnyen sgrub mdzad / yab mched¹²⁶ dang / gnas rab 'byams pa phun tshogs / mnyam med chos dbang rgyal mtshan / rin sgang pa gur ston nam mkha' rdo rje sogs brten¹²⁷ / 'brog bla brang gsang sngags bde chen gling btav / gzhan¹²⁸ yang bral sgang gi dgon¹²⁹ dkar zil gnon¹³⁰ gling / mkhar bang¹³¹ gi kun dga' gling / [11a] tsum dgon pa dngos¹³² sogs lha Khang bdun tsam¹³³ bzhengs par¹³⁴ grags so //

[g]

de nyid la sras dgu 'khrungs pa¹³⁵ las / lnga 'brum nag gi rkyen gyis gshegs / 'jigs¹³⁶ bral / thon smyon / nam seng / rgyal mtshan bcas bzhugs pa 'di yan bla brang¹³⁷ gcig tu yod kyang / 'di nas gyes te / 'jigs¹³⁸ bral thon smyon gnyis bla brang 'og dang / nam seng rgyal mtshan gnyis bla brang gong du bzhugs pas de man bla brang gong 'og du grags / nam mkha' seng ges¹³⁹ bla brang gong gсар du btav cing / mnga' bdag khri bsod nams dbang phyug lde dang dus mtshungs / yab nam mkha' lhun grub / byams sprin sku skyes bsod nams rgyal po / sprul sku nam mkha' brgya sbyin / de'i sprul pa'i sku rig 'dzin yol mo ba¹⁴⁰ bstan 'dzin nor bu / gcung sgam smyon phyag rdor nor bu sogs yongs 'dzin¹⁴¹ du bsten¹⁴² / skyid grong / la ldebs / tsum sogs su rig 'dzin yol mo ba¹⁴³ gdan drangs te skye bdun dang sman sgrub kyi sgrub chen mang du btsugs¹⁴⁴ zhing skyes chen mang po'i 'phrin las kyi sgo phye / yol mo bstan 'dzin nor bu dang thugs yid¹⁴⁵ chig 'dres su gyur te chab shog tu / sngags 'chang byang chub sems dpa' sems dpa' chen po / tshul [11b] 'chos dang / 'dzin chags dang / phyogs 'dzin gyi g.yul las rnam par rgyal ba zhes bsnags zhing / nor bu bde chen gyis¹⁴⁶ mdzad pa'i rnam thar gsol 'debs su /

120 bsten 121 gsen 122 rdo rje'i 123 skyangs 124 skyangs so 125 gung 126 mchad 127 bsten
128 bzhan 129 dgan 130 non 131 bam 132 ngos 133 tsams 134 gzheng par 135 'khrung pa
136 'jig 137 bla grang 138 'jig 139 seng ge'i 140 yul mo pa 141 yong 'dzin 142 styen 143 yol mo
pa 144 gtsugs 145 yig 146 nor bu bde chen gyi gyis

nam mkha' bzhin du rab yangs¹⁴⁷ lta ba'i gyad /
 smra ba'i seng ge sgom pa'i rtsal gsum ldan /
 spyod pa mchog gis¹⁴⁸ las can thams cad du /
 dbang bsgyur rig 'dzin chen por gsol ba 'debs /

zhes sogs 'byung ngo //

[h]

de'i sras sngags 'chang nor bu bde chen ni / khams spo bo¹⁴⁹ rtag brtan rin
 chen steng nas gter ston khrag 'thung nus ldan bdud 'dul rdo rjes¹⁵⁰ dam
 rdzad / shog ser¹⁵¹ sogs dang lhan cig bka' shog tu stsal bar¹⁵² / yang gsang
 rdo rje phur pa'i bka'i tha ram las /

nam snying sprul pa dpal 'bar nye ba ru :
 bde ba'i ming can brang dbus rme bas brgyan :
 skal ldan de yis¹⁵³ chos 'di nyams blangs pas :
 rigs chos bstan pa nyams med 'phel ba dang :
 tshe gcig nyid la padma'i thugs klong bde :

zhes nam snying gi sprul par lung gis zin cing sku'i snying khar sha mtshan
 kyang yod par grags / sku na phra mo'i dus dkar yer rig 'dzin yol mo ba¹⁵⁴
 bstan 'dzin [12a] nor bu'i spyang sngar byon / gtsug phud 'phul ba mtshan
 nor bu bde chen du gsol / rtse ba chen pos rjes su bzung zhing dbang lung
 man ngag gi bdud rtsi mang du gsan / skabs shig khyod la de ring ltad mo
 zhis ston pa yin gsungs¹⁵⁵ / gza' phod gyang logs su bkram par yol mo ba¹⁵⁶
 chen po nyid rang sku 'cham 'gying bag stangs¹⁵⁷ stabs ji ltar mdzad pa
 bzhin phod kha¹⁵⁸ de yang 'gul zhing rnam 'gyur ji bzhin ston pa'i rdzu
 'phrul kyang gzigs / yab rje nam mkha' seng ge las rang lugs mdo chen pa'i
 chos tshul yongs su rdzogs pa dang / dpal 'bar grub thob dpag bsam ye shes
 las phyag rgya chen po'i zab khrid gsan pas gnas lugs gdod ma'i rang zhal
 mngon du gyur / gzhan yang brag dkar rngog ston karma blo bzang / ras
 chen karma chos 'phel / ling ba pa rgyal thang zil gnon¹⁵⁹ rdo rje / glo bo
 pa¹⁶⁰ kun bzang klong yangs¹⁶¹ / sgam¹⁶² smyon phyag rdor nor bu sogs gsar
 rnying gi tshad mar grub pa'i skyes chen dam pa mang du bsten zhing / gter
 ston gar dbang rdo rje las rang gter gyi smin grol yongs [12b] rdzogs gsan /
 mkhar¹⁶³ bang kun dga' gling du sgrub chen 'dzugs pa sogs thugs yid chig
 'dres kyi chos sras su gyur / rtsis dkar nag dbyangs 'char¹⁶⁴ sogs thun mong
 gi rig gnas¹⁶⁵ kyang mang du mkhyen cing rnam dpyod kyi klong yangs
 pas¹⁶⁶ sgyu 'phrul khro tung gi las byang nag po 'gro shes sogs 'ga' zhis

¹⁴⁷ rab yang ¹⁴⁸ gi ¹⁴⁹ spu bo ¹⁵⁰ rdo rje'i ¹⁵¹ gser ¹⁵² rtsal bar ¹⁵³ yi ¹⁵⁴ yol mo pa
¹⁵⁵ gsung ¹⁵⁶ yol mo pa ¹⁵⁷ stang ¹⁵⁸ phod ka ¹⁵⁹ gzil non ¹⁶⁰ blo bo ¹⁶¹ yang ¹⁶² sgom
¹⁶³ khar ¹⁶⁴ char ¹⁶⁵ nas ¹⁶⁶ yang bas

mdzad / khro thung gi las byang 'di smin grol gling tu gter chen chos kyi rgyal po'i spyan sngar yang gzigs te chog khrigs shin tu legs zhes dbugs dbyung mdzad / skyid grong nub phyogs nas btsun mo zhig khab tu bsun par lam bar du skyid grong 'dzam gling pa'i bla ma zhig gis¹⁶⁷ bag ma rta thon nas phrogs par brten phan tshun 'thab 'khon chen por gyur pa na rig¹⁶⁸ sngags 'chang dbang 'di nyid kyis¹⁶⁹ mgon po'i las tshogs 'byed pa rta g.yag gi 'khor lo'i las sbyor mdzad pas zhag bdun gyi khongs su pha rol pa bza'¹⁷⁰ mi nang 'thab¹⁷¹ kyis¹⁷² gyes / de nas kyang lcogs rir mngon spyod kyi las sbyor la sku mtshams bcad de bzhugs par / zhag bdun tsam nas yab chos rje nam mkha' seng ge nyid byon te bug sgo nas / khyod ci byed kyi yod / ngan sbyor gyi las 'dra mi byed [13a] pa yod dam / zhes gsungs pa¹⁷³ la mtshams nang nas / da lam nang du mi phebs sku mkhyen zhus pas yab kyis sgo bshigs te nang du byon pas mngon spyod¹⁷⁴ drag po'i dkiyl 'khor bshams¹⁷⁵ nas 'dug pa zhabs tho'¹⁷⁶ dkrugs / da nas 'di 'dra ba'i las byas na nga dang khyod gnyis dam tshig med do zhes bka' bkyon¹⁷⁷ mdzad kyang de'i sngon du las sbyor gyi rtags rdzogs par byung te mi ring bar pha rol pa'i brgyud chad par gyur / 'brog bla brang gong du bzhugs skabs gzhan¹⁷⁸ gyi sbod gtong gi gnam lcags drag pos thog bab kyang sku la nyes skyon med pa nye logs kyi pha bong¹⁷⁹ la bab pa'i rjes da lta'ang gsal bar snang / gsan rgya shin tu che zhing mang po byang chub gling pa'i thugs gter 'khor 'das rang grol skor kyang bzhugs pas bod yul dbus 'gyur 'chang nas rdo rje brag rig 'dzin padma 'phrin las dang / smin gling gter chen chos kyi rgyal po'i bka'i 'byon dgos par bskul bar mdzad kyang phebs¹⁸⁰ ma thub skad / grva dpon po gong nas btsun mo zhig bzhes par sras mo gsum las sras ma byung bar tsum nyi lhod spas skya zhes pa nas las rgya zhig la sras [13b] bskrun pa'i rten 'brel¹⁸¹ mdzad pas sras bdud 'dul rdo rje 'khrungs pa¹⁸² ni byams sprin sku skyes kyi sras sngags 'chang nam mkha' kun bzang gi skye srid du grags / 'di nyid dgung¹⁸³ lo nyi shu rtsa lnga par sku gshegs / de'i btsun mor skyid grong cang nas jo bo'i rigs kyi bdag mo mkha' 'gro'i mtshan ldan zhig bzhes par sras sku mched gsum 'khrungs par gcen bstan 'dzin / 'bring po bstan pa'i nor bu / mtha' chung rgyal sras seng ge yin la / chung ngu nas bklogs¹⁸⁴ yig gi mtshon mes pos yab kyi tshab mdzad nas bskyangs / nor bu bde chen gyi sras mo bsod nams rgyal mo zhes pa grva 'dzam gling pa rgyal tshab seng ge'i btsun mo gyur pa sras 'dzam gling pa blo gros chos 'phel 'khrungs¹⁸⁵ zhing / chung ngu nas la ldebs su mes po'i spyan sngar bslab¹⁸⁶ sbyang dang gsan¹⁸⁷ bsam mang du mdzad tshul rnam thar du gsal / mdo chen bla rabs su gur ston lhun grub bkra shis man la 'di nyid gsan rgya che bar snang zhing / nyid kyi gsol 'debs zhal gsung ma nga rgyal gyi 'gying glu zhes pa las /

167 gi 168 rigs 169 kyi 170 gza' 171 nang thabs 172 kyi 173 gsung pa 174 mngon brjod
 175 bsham 176 rdo'i 177 skyon 178 bzhan 179 pha vong 180 phebs 181 brten 'brel
 182 'khrung pa 183 gung 184 bklog 185 'khrung 186 slabs 187 bsan

legs byas dge ba'i spyan ras gzigs dbang dngos /
 nam mkha' seng ge'i sras 'khrungs¹⁸⁸ rjes [14a] su bzung /
 gсар rnying smin grol zab mo'i mdzod sgo phye /
 sngon sbyangs las 'phro sad la gsol ba 'debs /

pad 'byung gnyis pa rgyal ba yol mo bar¹⁸⁹ /
 gtsug phud phul nas mtshan yang¹⁹⁰ bla mas gsol /
 shes rab rgyas pa'i rten 'brel zab mo gnang /
 sras kyi thu bor dgongs¹⁹¹ la gsol ba 'debs /

mkhas grub bcu phrags gcig dang gnyis brten nas /
 sku'i byin brlabs gsung gi chos char phab /
 thugs kyi brtser bskyangs¹⁹² chos sku'i rang zhal mthong /
 dag snang phyogs med 'byongs la gsol ba 'debs /

yi dam zhi khro'i bsnyen bsgrub bgyis pa'i tshe /
 byin gyis brlabs pa'i drod tshad cung zad thob /
 gdon bgegs zil gyis¹⁹³ non pa'i gdeng tshad gyur /
 'phrin las mthar¹⁹⁴ phyin de la gsol ba 'debs /

'gro tshogs nad dang duḥ khas nyams¹⁹⁵ thag pa /
 mthong tshe snying rje'i shugs kyis¹⁹⁶ bdag bde kun /
 'phags med gtong bar nus pa'i btul shugs can /
 rgyal sras spyod la zhugs der gsol ba 'debs /

shes rab blo yi padmo kha phye bas¹⁹⁷ /
 mdo rgyud bstan bcos dgongs pa ma lus pa /
 ji bzhin rtogs pa'i spobs pa¹⁹⁸ mngon du gyur /
 thos bsam nor gyi phyug der gsol ba 'debs / [14b]

gsang sngags smin grol chos kyi sgo phye bas¹⁹⁹ /
 brgyud pa'i byin brlabs 'phos pa'i ltas bzang byung /
 bskal ldan rnam la thar pa'i sa bon thebs /
 'brel tshad don ldan khyod la gsol ba 'debs /

zhes gsung zhing zhal gyis 'che pa²⁰⁰ bzhin don la gnas / mdzad pa mtha' ma
 mkhar bang kun dga' gling yang thog tu zhi bar gshegs / sku gdung sbyongs
 pa dang phyi rten bzhengs pa²⁰¹ sogs kyang 'dzam gling pa blo gros chos
 'phel gyis mdzad par grags so //

[i]

bdud 'dul gyi sras bstan 'dzin gyis ku thang tsum nyi lhod bla brang du

¹⁸⁸ 'khrung ¹⁸⁹ yul mo par ¹⁹⁰ ya ¹⁹¹ dgong ¹⁹² skyang ¹⁹³ gyi ¹⁹⁴ thar ¹⁹⁵ nyam ¹⁹⁶ kyi
¹⁹⁷ bye bas ¹⁹⁸ spob pa ¹⁹⁹ bye bas ²⁰⁰ ches pa ²⁰¹ gshengs pa

bzhugs zhing 'di la sras ma byung / bstan pa'i nor bus lan lde dang tsum gnyis phan tshun bskyongs²⁰² res mdzad / rgyal sras pas 'brog bla brang du bzhugs / 'dis mes po dang yab bstan pa'i nor bu las yab chos rnam rdzogs par gsan cing dbus gtsang du byon nas o rgyan smin grol gling du kun mkhyen dharma²⁰³ śrī khu dbon mjal zhing gter gsar skor²⁰⁴ dang / nub dgon pa chen po khams lung pa padma dbang rgyal las mdo dbang yongs rdzogs gsan / rig 'dzin kaḥ thog pa chen po tshe dbang nor bus kyang [15a] yongs 'dzin du bzhes nas sgyu 'phrul skor yongs rdzogs dang / ma bdun pa nas brgyud pa'i phyag chen sogs dkar po drug gi khrid rgyun kyang gsan cing sngags 'chang chen por bsngags / chab shog tu / tshe phrang ni zhe drug dgu dang lnga bcur che zhing / de las grol na re zhiḡ 'tsho / 'phos nas re zhiḡ gnas gzhan dang / de nas dal 'byor lus thob nas nam mkha'i snying po'i²⁰⁵ byin gyis brlabs pas rjes su bzung nas rdo rje theḡ la dkri bar 'gyur / ces lung bstan no //

[j]

sngags 'chang chen po 'di nyid la sras padma rgya mtsho / rig 'dzin 'gyur med rnam rgyal / dpal mgon / chos dbang ste bzhi 'khrungs²⁰⁶ / gcen padma rgya mtshos²⁰⁷ tsum du bzhugs zhing sras sngags 'chang o rgyan dang / chos mkhar mkhan chen blo bzang chos grags kyi sprul pa'i sku blo bzang nyi ma 'khrungs²⁰⁸ / sngags 'chang 'gyur med rnam rgyal gyis²⁰⁹ yab rgyal sras pa las rang lugs yab chos rnam rdzogs par gsan / rje rig 'dzin chen por gtsug phud phul ba'i mtshan tshe dbang bstan 'dzin grub pa'i rdo rjer gsol / smin grol gyi bdud rtsi mang du gsan cing / dpal mo [15b] chos sding du lho brag pa sdom²¹⁰ brtson²¹¹ ngag dbang lhun grub grags pa las snga 'gyur rgyud 'bum rin po che'i lung yongs rdzogs dang / rje 'ba' ra ba ngag dbang ye shes las 'dus pa mdo dbang chen mo tshang bar gsan / gzhan²¹² yang bshes gnyen dam pa mang du brten / ngor kun dga' lhun grub las gar dbang rdo rje'i zab tig gi smin grol gsan cing phar yang 'ja' tshon²¹³ pa'i dpal mgon ma ning gi dbang lung sogs phul / rigs sras rje nā tha'i mtshan can la rnying rgyud yongs rdzogs kyi ljags lung stsol²¹⁴ zhing snga phyir sgyu 'phrul gyi dbang lung yongs rdzogs tshar bzhi tsam gnang 'dug / rje mgon gnang pa / chos mkhar sprul pa'i sku / rje dpal lding pa rigs sras sku mched sogs zhal slob kyang mang du byung / kho bos kyang rang lo bdun pa'i skabs rgyud 'bum yi glegs bam kha shas dang dpal mgon legs ldan gyi dbang lung nos / chos rdzong²¹⁵ gi bla brang dang / smu lug chos dkar gling gi bla brang 'du khang dang bcas pa btab / dgung lo re dgu par dag pa'i snang ba ngo mtshar ba dang bcas zhi dbyings su gshegs so / gcung dpal mgon gyis gso rig mkhas par

202 skyongs 203 rdarma 204 bskor 205 snying pos 206 'khrung 207 rgya mtsho'i 208 'khrung
209 gyi 210 sdoms 211 rtson 212 bzhan 213 'ja' mtshon 214 stsal 215 sdzong

mkhyen / [16a] dpa' bo'i rtags mtshan dpral ba'i dbyings su sme ba dkar po
sran ma tsam zhig yod skad / 'di nyid dgung lo zhe bdun par gshegs / mtha'
chung chos dbang gi²¹⁶ thog mar byams sprin du mag par byon / rjes su ma
mthun par rang gnas su phyir log mdzad de sku mched lhan du bzhugs /
mkhyen rab kyi spyen yang rje dpal lding pa dang lhan du dbus gtsang gnas
skor la byon / gshegs rjes sku'i skye srid shin tu gsal ba gnyis²¹⁷ btud du
byung bar grags so //

[k]

rig 'dzin 'gyur med rnam rgyal la sras tshe dbang legs grub bzang po / tshe
dbang bde chen bzang po / tshe dbang 'chi med mgon po te mched gsum
'khrungs so //

[l]

sngar gong du brjod pa'i gur ston nam mka' lhun grub kyi sras 'jigs²¹⁸ bral
dang / thod smyon gnyis la sras dkon mchog lhun grub²¹⁹ 'khrungs / sngags
'chang nor bu bde chen las yab chos skor sogs dbang lung mang bar gsan
kyang mjug tu sel²²⁰ phran bu byung skad / dbus gtsang du byon nas smin
grol gling du gter chos kyi rgyal [16b] po'i spyen sngar zab chos mang zhig
gsan cing gter chen nyid la sgyu 'phrul rdo rje'i las rim sogs kyi lung 'ga' zhig
kyang phul ba rnam thar du gsal lo //

[m]

dkon mchog lhun grub la sras gar dbang / chos dbang / 'chi med phun
tshogs rgyal po gsum 'khrungs²²¹ gcen gnyis kyis²²² bla brang bskyangs²²³
zhing / gcung gi²²⁴ stag rtse ba sogs mkhas grub mang po'i zhabs la btugs /
rtsis dkar nag phul du phyin pa mkhyen / dbus 'gyur 'chang du byon nas
smin gling du rig 'dzin gter bdag gling pa'i spyen sngar gtsug phud phul /
mtshan 'gyur med gsang sngags bstan 'dzin du gsol / gter chen yab sras dang
/ gcung mkhan chen lo tsa ba chen po sogs khu dbon rnam kyis²²⁵ rjes su
bzung zhing gter gsar skor gtso bor gyur pa'i smin grol gyi gdams ngag mang
du gsan / thugs rjes shin tu 'dzin pa'i zhal gdams dang byin rten mang po
stsol²²⁶ / rang gnas su phebs nas sku tshe'i smad ri khrod dpal lding kho nar
bsgrub pa la bzhugs shing / gter gsar bla rdzogs thugs gsum [17a] gshin rje²²⁷
dregs 'joms / bde gshegs kun 'dus sogs yi dam mang po'i bsnyen bsgrub las
gsum mtha' dag tshang ba dang rim pa gnyis kyi nyams bzhes gnad smin
mdzad / bde gshegs kun 'dus kyi chos tshan²²⁸ 'ga' dang / gsol 'debs le'u
bdun ma sogs gsung spar kyang kha shas bzhengs²²⁹ / brag dkar ba grub

²¹⁶ gi ²¹⁷ nyis ²¹⁸ 'jig ²¹⁹ lhun grub ²²⁰ gsel ²²¹ 'khrung ²²² kyi ²²³ skyangs ²²⁴ gi ²²⁵ kyi
²²⁶ stsal ²²⁷ bshin rje ²²⁸ mtshan ²²⁹ gzhengs

mchog ye shes chos grags dang / kho bo'i bla ma rig 'dzin mgon gnang pa
 chen pos kyang gter gsar skor yongs rdzogs gyi smin grol gsan pa²³⁰ sogs zhal
 slob gghan²³¹ phan skyong ba po'ang²³² mang du byung / rtsis rig gi slob ma
 grva a ya stobs ldan²³³ / de'i spang zhing pa bla mkhyen mgon por grags pa
 las rim par phyogs 'dir phug lugs rtsis rig gi lugs srol 'phel bar snang ngo //

[n]

gar dbang chos dbang gnyis kyi sras dpal bzang po / 'byung gnas / gcung nor
 bu don grub gsum 'khrungs²³⁴ / gcen dpal lugs gnyis la rnam dpyod gyi
 spyan yangs pa de dang gcung gis bla brang bskyangs²³⁵ / 'bring pos kham
 lung pa gsang sngags bstan 'dzin la gtsug phud phul / mtshan 'gyur med
 [17b] 'phrin las bstan 'dzin du gsol / byang gter thugs sgrub rnam gsum gyi
 dbang lung khrid sogs kha 'thor dang / ngor kun dga' lhun grub las zab tig
 dang dkon mchog spyi 'dus sogs dang / 'bras ljongs pa rnam grol rdo rje las
 gter gsar skor / rig 'dzin 'gyur med rnam rgyal las sgyu 'phrul skor sogs yab
 chos kyi rgyun yongs rdzogs gsan cing snga sor sngags 'chang nor bu bde
 chen dang dkon mchog lhun grub gnyis dpon slob bar du sel²³⁶ byung
 ba'ang 'di pas bshags bskong gi sel²³⁷ sbyang dag par mdzad de 'di nas sel²³⁸
 med gtsang dag tu song / dpal ldan sding zhes sngon dus mnyam med chos
 rje ston pas dgon btap par bar skabs su stong pa lta bur gyur pas nyams pa
 gsos zhing sgrub sde'i srol gsar du btsugs²³⁹ / bla brang dang / 'du khang rten
 brten par bcas pa / yig drug chos kyi 'khor lo / sde'i lha khang gi rten²⁴⁰ gtso
 slob dpon chen po'i sku sogs rten²⁴¹ bzhengs²⁴² dang / lo lo ltar na rag dong
 dkrugs kyi dkyil 'khor sgrub mchod shin tu rgyas pa dang / zab tig gi cho ga
 gsar du 'dzugs pa sogs cho ga phyag len dar rgyas kyi phyag rjes kyang bzang
 / ngor pa chos rjer [18a] gter gsar 'chi med yang snying kun 'dus kyi dbang
 lung phul zhing / rje bla ma mgon gnang pa'i²⁴³ zhabs sogs rigs dbon rnams
 dang / kun spang nam mkha' bsam gtan sogs zhal slob kyang mang bar
 byung / sku tshe dang sgrub pa mnyam te dgung lo don gsum par dag zhing
 du gshegs so //

[o]

sngags 'chang dpal bzang po dang / nor bu don grub gnyis kyi sras su nam
 mkha' lhun grub²⁴⁴ / bdud 'dul dbang phyug / bskal bzang rnam rgyal te
 mched gsum 'khrungs so //

[p]

gong du rig 'dzin 'gyur med rnam rgyal kyi sras mtha' chung ngu gyur pa
 khyab bdag rdo rje sems dpa'i ngo bor bzhugs pa'i bla ma dam pa mgon po'i

²³⁰ bsan pa ²³¹ bzhan ²³² skyongs ba po'ang ²³³ stob ldan ²³⁴ 'khrung ²³⁵ skyangs ²³⁶ gsel
²³⁷ gsel ²³⁸ gsel ²³⁹ gtsugs ²⁴⁰ brten ²⁴¹ brten ²⁴² gzhengs ²⁴³ gnang po'i ²⁴⁴ lhun 'grub

mtshan ni rab byung bcu gsum pa na tshod ldan shing mo phag gi lor sku
 'khrungs / dngos grub phug tu rig 'dzin chen po tshe dbang nor bu'i spany
 lngar gtsug phud phul / mtshan tshe dbang 'chi med mgon por gsol / lam
 zab mo bla ma'i rnal 'byor gyi bka' 'grel gsan / dgung lo drug pa'i skabs ljags
 klog²⁴⁵ tshogs med par mkhyen cing / zhi khro'i [18b] las byang sogs rang
 lugs sgrub phrin gyi chog gzhung rnam thugs 'dzin mdzad / dgu pa'i skabs
 phyag bris sbyongs pa'i tshul dang / yab rje sngags 'chang chen po las / yab
 chos sgyu 'phrul skor dang na rag dong dkrugs kyi dbang lung sogs snga
 phyir smin grol thams cad bum pa gang byor²⁴⁶ gsan / gzhan yang rje dpal
 sding pa 'gyur med 'phrin las bstan 'dzin / rig 'dzin mgon gnang pa chen po
 'phrin las bdud 'joms / sdom²⁴⁷ brtson bstan 'dzin rdo rje sogs las rang lugs
 gtso bor gyur pa'i gsar rnying gi zab rgyas chos tshul rgya mtsho'i bdud rtsis
 thugs kyi bum pa bskangs / thun mong²⁴⁸ gi rig gnas / gso rig / rtsis dkar nag
 / bzo²⁴⁹ 'bris 'bur kyang mkhyen cing snyan ngag²⁵⁰ kyi tshig rtsom kyang
 rtsol med rang rdol du thugs la shar / dgung lo bcu drug pa nas sgu 'phrul
 zhi khro'i bsnyen sgrub²⁵¹ tshul bzhi du mdzad cing / yab rje nyid las thugs
 rje chen po ye shes 'od mchog gi zab khrid gsan skabs gnas lugs yang dag
 pa'i ye shes chen po'i rang zhal gzigs / nyer gcig pa nas bzung zhe bzhi bar
 tshun [19a] chos rdzong / bum phug / gru 'dzin dkar / lcogs ri bkra shis
 sding bcas su lo gsum gyi bsgrub pa tshar bzhi dang / gzhan yang zla ba nas
 zhang bdun phrag gi mtha' brten par yi dam lhag pa'i lha mang po'i bsnyen
 sgrub dang / rdzogs pa chen po khregs chod kyi nyams bzhes la snying por
 dril nas / thod rgal rlung sbyor sogs kyang dus gnad dang bstun te thugs
 nyams su bzhes pas ma dag pa'i snang ba 'gog pa'i bskyed²⁵² rim la brtan pa
 thob / rdzogs rim kyi ye shes la dbang 'byor bas rdzogs pa chen po rang
 snang ris med kyi dgongs pa shar / gzung 'dzin gyi mtshan ma rang sar grol /
 'khor 'das thams cad gzhi med rtsa bral mnyam²⁵³ yangs khyab brdal²⁵⁴ chen
 por byang chub / mnyam²⁵⁵ rjes dbyer med 'od gsal 'khor yug gi ting nge
 'dzin la rang dbang brnyes / dam rdzas la sogs pa'i dngos grub kyi rdzas
 thams cad la thogs pa med par rol nus zhing / rkyen ngan la ji mi snyam pa'i
 rig rtsal brtul zhugs kyi spyod pa mnga' / mtshan snang dang nyams kyi
 gzigs ngor bla ma dang yi dam gyi lha'i [19b] zhal bstan te byin gyis brlabs /
 mdo rgyud man ngag / mkhas grub dam pa'i rnam kyi gsung rab rnam la
 gzigs rtogs mdzad pas blo gros kyi rnam par²⁵⁶ spyod pa'i mthu thogs pa
 med par brnyes te ji snyed pa'i chos rnam la sgro 'dogs chod pas 'chad pa
 dang rtsom pa'i tshul la zla med par gyur / dgung lo nyer brgyad pa'i tshe
 nai pā la'i gnas rten²⁵⁷ rnam mjal skor dang sum bcu pa'i skabs nyi 'og dbus
 gtsang gi ljongs²⁵⁸ / tsa ri tra ye shes kyi 'khor lo sogs gnas rten²⁵⁹ mtha' dag

²⁴⁵ bklog ²⁴⁶ 'jor ²⁴⁷ sdoms ²⁴⁸ thun mongs ²⁴⁹ gzo ²⁵⁰ snyan dngags ²⁵¹ bsgrub ²⁵² skyed
²⁵³ mnyams ²⁵⁴ gdal ²⁵⁵ mnyams ²⁵⁶ rnam par ²⁵⁷ brten ²⁵⁸ ljong ²⁵⁹ brten

mjal bar²⁶⁰ byon zhing skabs de dag tu yang shig nad la sogs pa'i lam bar rnam su dka²⁶¹ spyad drag po mang du thugs nyams su bzhes / gangs can gyi mgon po phyag na pad dkar 'chang ba 'jam dpal rgya mtsho yab sras / rgyal ba'i dbang po karma pa chen po bcu gsum pa / rje btsun 'brug pa rin po che / smin gling mkhan chen o rgyan bstan 'dzin rdo rje sogs tshad mar grub pa'i skeyes chen dam pa mang du mjal nas rang gnas su phebs / chos rdzong gi 'du [20a] khang rten brten par bcas pa / smu lugs chos dkar gling 'du khang yig drug chos kyi 'khor lo / gsang chen snga 'gyur rgyud 'bum rin chen yongs su rdzogs pa / thugs rten gser gdung sogs bya ba las kyi 'khor lo dang / rang rigs mdo chen bla ma tshang mar snga 'gyur rgyud 'bum rin po che'i bklags lung yongs rdzogs dang / sgyu 'phrul skor sogs yab chos gtso bor gyur pa'i smin grol mtha' dag bum pa gang byor btsal²⁶² zhing / kho bos kyang snga phyir sgyu 'phrul gyi dbang lung dang phyag rdzogs kyi man ngag sogs zab chos kyi bka' drin mang du nos / bstan pa yun tu gnas pa'i phyir sgyu 'phrul zhi khro dang rdo rje phreng ba'i dbang chog gsan yig phyag rdzogs kyi bshad 'grel bsnyen yig sogs legs bshad kyi bka' rtsom kyang mang du mdzad / rang don yid byed kyi 'khri ba²⁶³ las rnam par grol nas bstan 'gro'i phan bde 'ba' zhig thugs su bcags pa'i snying stobs²⁶⁴ chen pos bshad sgrub las gsum gyi rnam par dkar ba'i 'phrin las kyi dus 'da' bar mdzad pas spyi dang khyad par gur rigs mdo chen pa'i bstan pa'i srog thud pa'i bka' drin gzhal du med pa ni sngon dus kyi sngags 'chang nor bu bde chen nas dam pa 'di nyid kho na [20b] mkhyen rtogs kyi rtsal dang / mdzad pa'i phyag rjes phul du byung ba mngon sum²⁶⁵ tshad mas grub pa'i phyir ro / de lta bu'i rnam thar chos su ston bzhin pa'i mur dgung lo lnga bcu bzhi pa'i sa ga chen po'i dmar phyogs gnam stong gi tho rengs gzugs sku'i dkyil 'khor chos dbyings 'od gsal gzhon nu bum sku'i klong du bsdu so / rnam par thar pa zhib tu rtogs par 'dod pa dag rje nyid kyi zhal gsung tshig bcad ma lhung lhung snyan pa'i²⁶⁶ chu sgra zhes pa zur du gsal ba las lta ba bya'o //

[IV]

de ltar na rje 'di yan gyi rnam thar rags zhib zhig smos pa las gzhan²⁶⁷ rnam ni rtogs par sla zhing / lo rgyus yig rnying zhig tu gur ston chen po dpal mdzes zhes pa [[*gloss*: sngon rabs su byung ba]] dang / ku thang zva²⁶⁸ phug pa rgyal dbang seng ge'i yab sbas tshul grub pa brnyes pa²⁶⁹ 'chi med 'od zer zhes pa yang gur phu ba yin par grags la / nang bses kyi rgyu mtshan zhib par cha ma 'tshal zhing / gzhan du²⁷⁰ ngag bgros dang gnam rgyun gog po sogs ni 'dir dkyus su mi mdzes pas btang snyoms su bzhang go //

²⁶⁰ 'jal bar ²⁶¹ bka' ²⁶² rtsal ²⁶³ khri ba ²⁶⁴ stob ²⁶⁵ mngon gsum ²⁶⁶ snyen pa'i ²⁶⁷ bzhan
²⁶⁸ za ²⁶⁹ rnyes pa ²⁷⁰ bzhan du

'dir smras pa /

a ho phul byung yon tan tshang tshing can /
grub rigs tsan dan ljon pa'i phreng ba gang / [21a]
rtogs brjod gsung zhim ngar po'i ngad thul ba /
mos ldan tsha gdung sel ba'i²⁷¹ dpal du sbyin /

sgon rabs rgan po'i gran tshigs ji bzhin gram²⁷² /
rgyus med byis pas lan zlos 'os min kyang /
'byung gyur phyogs tsam brjod pa'ang dkon mthong nas /
mang thos mgrin pa'i lam nas dkyus su sdebs /

ding dus mngon mtho'i rigs 'chang gzhan²⁷³ 'dren khyu /
dbyar skyes nyu gu'i lang tsho ltar 'phel kyang /
mkhyen rtogs sbrang rtsis dpal 'dzin pu sta ka /
don gnyis ze'u 'bru rgod pa nam mkha' bzhin /

de phyir da ltar 'tsho bzhes phyi rabs su /
'byon 'gyur ji snyed blang dor them skas las /
sngon byon dam pa'i rjes zhugs rnam grol gyi /
khang bzang rtser 'dzegs gzhan phan bya ra mdzod /

tshul 'di brjod las dge dngos gang thob des /
rgyal bstan snying po snga 'gyur theg mchog gi /
bstan dang de 'dzin dar rgyas 'phel ba dang /
bdag gzhan mngon mtho nges legs mchog thob shog /

ces dpal ldan gur rigs mdo chen brgyud pa'i lo rgyus nyung ngu'i ngag gi
gtam du bya ba padma rā ga'i²⁷⁴ phreng ba 'di yang snga sor rje bla ma
khyab bdag 'khor lo'i mgon po [21b] nā tha'i zhabs nas mdo chen bka'
brgyud gser 'phreng gi kha skongs zhig mdzad bzhed yod kyang don gnyer
gyi nan bskul zhu ba po ma byung bar rten don du ma smin pa bzhed pa'i
lhag ma can skongs ba'i ched du 'bri bar 'dun pa'i thog sngon byung gi gtan
tshigs rim gyi nus pas phyi rabs su tshul bzhin gleng ba nyin skra ltar gyur
pas 'di lta bu zhig cis kyang yi ge'i ris su bgyid dgos zhes mdo chen pa'i
gdung 'tshob²⁷⁵ rnam dpyod kyi spyen ldan dpal sding gdan sa pa tshe
dbang 'gyur med rgya mtsho gsung gis yang yang bskul ma mdzad pas rkyen
byas sngon rabs kyi lo rgyus yi ger 'khod pa dag zhib par mthong thos su
gyur phyir ji bzhin brjod par mi spob kyang bla ma dam pa'i zhal lung las go
thos su gyur pa song dang / dam pa mang po'i rnam thar las ci rigs su gsal ba
rnams 'thor ba bsdu te ji ltar mtshams par sgro ma btags par bya bral ba
chos kyi dbang phyug gis rab byung bcu bzhi pa'i na tshod ldan shing mo

²⁷¹ gsel ba'i ²⁷² btam ²⁷³ bzhan ²⁷⁴ ra ga'i ²⁷⁵ tshob

phag gi lo sa ga chen po'i tshes 21 bzang por grub pa'i gnas chen brag dkar
rta sor sbyar ba'i yi [22a] ge pa'ang bskul ba po nyid kyis so // 'di kyang nges
gsang sngags rdo rje snying po'i bstan pa dar rgyas yun ring du gnas pa'i
rgyur gyur cig // dge'o / dge'o / dge'o //

History of the Lineage of the Glorious Gur-rigs mDo-chen [Tradition], a Speech of a Few Words [entitled]
“A Rosary of Rubies”

Oṃ svasti!

To the lotus feet of the assembly of Siddhas and Vidyādharas called a history of the succession of teachers of the lineage of the glorious Gur-rigs mDo-chen [tradition], a wonderful deed in the form of a discourse of a few words [entitled] “A Rosary of Rubies”, I bow down visibly with my head, prostrating myself and taking refuge.

The sun of the compassion of all the Jinas, who are good friends towards beings, even there being no reason for it, because of its playful appearance in the expanse of the mind of those disciples to be disciplined by whatever [means], the host of the dark deeds and afflictions of the mind stream of beings, they are overcome in the end [and] the sensations of happiness and bliss become perfectly clear—which [thus] enlarges the grove of the hundred petals of the essential doctrine, it is proper to praise this rosary of the lineage of the glorious Gur-rigs mDo-chen [tradition].

Alas! The diadem of the Jina’s teaching, by raising it on top of the banner of the practice lineage the rain of happiness and bliss for beings, they made it fall everywhere—may they [all] be victorious!

Falling not into extremes, grasping all the teaching methods of scripture and realization, and especially clarifying the essential doctrine—[these] protectors, they are known from the [text of the] golden rosary of the [mDo-chen] bKa’-brgyud [tradition].

[They are] the powerful sun of the profound meaning of the Early Translations, holding a treasure from where appears exposition and spiritual practice [of the doctrine]—the lineage of the succession of the outstanding beings of the noble Gur family from before, [their members are] lined up in proper order.

The discourse of the qualities [of beings] accomplished in such a way, it produces an abundance of faith and virtue, and in this [work], thinking: “Are they not [all] worthy as persons to be popular?”, it will be spread in the form of the letters of a speech easy to be understood.

[I]

Now, here, in this domain of snow-covered mountains, the realm of those to be disciplined by the own power of Ārya Avalokiteśvara, the embodiment of the compassion of all Jinas possessing the ten powers (*daśabala*) and their spiritual sons (i.e. the Bodhisattvas): there arrived in such great an amount that they are not to be measured even by the number of stars, great noble beings in an uninterrupted way, who were holding the doctrine, clarifying completely the precious teaching of scripture and realization of the Jina, the “Friend of the Sun” (*ādityabandhu*). Among them dwells [a tradition] where the great river of the long-lasting essential doctrine of the great secret of the Early Translations and the great river of the exposition and spiritual practice of the golden rosary of the precious Practice Lineage was merged into one.

And especially, there dwells without interruption a transmission from mouth to ear from the Guhyapati Vajrapāni onwards, a stream of ripening and liberating instructions (*upadeśa*) of the Māyājāla [cycle], which is the marvellous essence among the Eighteen Tantras [of the Mahāyoga class], a subdivision of those precious tantras which are even greater and more profound than the profound secret of the speech [uttered] by Samantabhadra-Vajradhara. The scriptural source from where this transmission appeared and the way of the [different] entrustments, fearing [too many] letters, it was not set down here; and more extensively it becomes clear in further histories of the transmission of the [tantras] *mDo*, *sGyu*, *Sems*, [these] three.¹

And in particular, what is called “bKa’-brgyud-pa”, the long-lasting system of the lineage of spiritual practice, in the world it is famous like the sun and the moon. In that case, the consecutive transmission from Vajradhara onwards, the detailed way of the biographies [of teachers] which appeared until the Protector of Beings gTsang-pa rGya-ras (1161–1211): it is accord-

¹ The trilogy *mDo sgyu sems gsum* stands for the three main tantras of the Anuyoga, Mahāyoga and Atiyoga teachings of the rNying-ma-pa school as they were transmitted in the “Spoken Teaching” (*bka’ma*) tradition. The three main lineages of this transmission and their later spread have been described in Dudjom Rinpoche (1991:599–732); for the special role of the monastery of Kah-thog in the codification and transmission of the *mDo sgyu sems* teachings in the 12th century, compare Ehrhard (1990:3). The period up to the 15th century was dominated by different family traditions, whose individual lineages have not yet been studied in greater detail; compare notes 3 & 7. The establishment of a new tradition of the *dGongs pa ’dus pa’i mdo*, the main tantra of the Anuyoga, was undertaken at the monastery of rDo-rje brag in Central Tibet in the 17th century; see Dalton (2002:161–203). The main figure behind this new tradition was the Second rDo-rje brag Rig-’dzin Padma ’phrin-las (1640–1718), who also wrote a lineage history; see his *’Dus pa’i mdo dbang gi bla ma brgyud pa’i rnam thar ngo mtshar dad pa’i phreng ba*, pp. 23.6 ff. This particular lineage had been disseminated in Mang-yul Gung-thang; concerning the persons active in this regard, compare notes 34 & 37.

ing to [the tradition] generally known as the Transmission of the Precepts. With the master rGya-ras-pa there came as the earlier, middle [and] later disciple an uncountable number [of them], divided into [the branches of] the “Upper ’Brug[-pa]”, the “Lower ’Brug[-pa]”, and the “Central ’Brug[-pa]”, [these] three. What was transmitted from the first one, the Jina rGod-tshang-pa mGon-po rdo-rje (1198–1258) onwards, [this tradition] is known as the “Upper ’Brug[-pa]”. Among the heart-sons of the master rGod-tshang-pa was the Jina Ma-bdun ras-chen himself; because this Lord touched also the feet of the Protector of Beings U-ri-pa or Jina Lo-ras[-pa dBang-phyug brtson-’grus] (1187–1250), [his system] is also mixed with the “Lower ’Brug[-pa]”. Therefore, the biographies up to him, they should be understood from where they become clear as something separate, [namely] in the old scripture of the history that is known as *mDo chen bka’ brgyud gser ’phreng*.²

In the following there will [only] be set down a rough version of the biographies of the teaching lineage of the successive transmission from Ma-bdun ras-chen onwards, who was the first one of this tradition, and the transmission of the Gur family in a consecutive way from Gur-ston lHun-grub bkra-shis onwards.

[II]

[a]

Now, he, who is known as the Jina Ma-bdun ras-chen or rNal-’byor chos-ldan with his alternative name. His place of birth [is the site] called Shel-mkhar at Gang[-bzang] in Upper Nyang which is part of rGya-gar gling-chung of Upper Nyang [in the] gTsang [province]; there he was born in the paternal line of the Gar [clan] in a family of mantra [practitioners] as the son of the father Jo-sras, [called] “The Rich Nepalese”, and the mother Zab-mo dge-ma, [these] two. At the age of eleven years he met the teacher, the great Knowledgeable One, Gar-ston Sangs-rgyas; the lock of hair was cut [by him] and he was given the name rNal-’byor chos-ldan. Up to the age of sixteen

² The development of the three main branches of the ’Brug-pa bKa’-brgyud-pa schools can be found, for example, in the religious chronicle of the Fourth ’Brug-chen Padma dkar-po (1527–1592); see his *Chos ’byung bstan pa’i padma rgyas pa’i nyin byed*, pp. 423.15–463.10. For the mention of Ma-bdun ras-chen as one of the main disciples of rGod-tshang-pa mGon-po rdo-rje, see *ibid.*, p. 444.14. Smith (2001:45) in his treatment of the literary genre of the “Golden Rosary” (*gser ’phreng*) was the first to identify the mDo-bo che-ba as an important bKa’-brgyud-pa school deriving from the “Upper ’Brug-pa”. Another sub-branch of the “Upper ’Brug-pa”, whose teaching lineages had spread in the region of Mang-yul Gung-thang, was the ’Ba’-ra-ba bKa’-brgyud-pa lineage; see Ehrhard (2000:58–66).

years he relied on that teacher and heard countless authoritative scriptures, empowerments, reading[-authorizations] and precepts of the tantras of the old and new Secret Mantras. When the sickness of an [infectious] disease, [which had been caused by a] demon from below, showed up, he closed himself up in retreat for one year; as he propitiated [Vajrapāṇi in the form of] rDo-rje gtum-po, he saw the face [of the deity] and was released from his sickness.

He met on many occasions scholars and siddhas such as gSang-sngags sdong-po, the great scholar of the rNying-ma-pa [school] of the Early Translations, the Jina Lo-ras[-pa] or Lord of the Teaching U-ri-pa, [who is] the fountain [of the tradition] of the “Lower ’Brug[-pa]”, Khro-phu Lo-tsā-ba [Byams-pa’i dpal] (1173–1250), Mañjunātha Sa-skya Paṇḍita [Kun-dga’ rgyal-mtshan] (1182–1251), the treasure-discoverer Guru Chos[-kyi] dbang[-phyug] (1212–1270) [and] the siddha ’Phags-pa; and he heard instructions [from all of them].³

He proceeded up to Ding-ri [in] La-stod [lHo], [and] in bDe-chen steng in the upper part of Tshong-’dus in gNya-’nang he met the Lord rGod-tshang-pa [for the first time]. He heard [from him] the mixture of the “Armour of the Twelve Meditations” and the “Doctrine of the Thirteen” and [then] having circumambulated Nepal [on pilgrimage] he arrived in [the region of] [Mang-yul] sKyid-grong. As he was collecting alms [there], there appeared among those who had a mark of being enclosed by abscesses (?) an old lady, who spoke: “Up there, when you step upon a substance [providing] siddhis and [then] take it, you will have arrived [at the right spot]!” As he went [accordingly] in order to search [for that spot], he saw that there was the opening of a dark cave on the nose of a mountain-face and proceeded to

³ In the transmission lineage of the Māyājāla cycle as received by Ma-bdun ras-chen, the master from whom he obtained these teachings is listed as Gar-ston rTogs-ldan chen-po. A biography of this master, written by one Bla-ma dKon-mchog rdo-rje, is available in the second volume of the *mDo chen bka’ brgyud gser ’phreng*; see Appendix I. The lineage is described on two occasions in the “Thob yig of the 17th Century”; see Appendix II: B.3.a & F.8.a. This particular transmission goes back to gNubs Sangs-rgyas ye-shes (b. 844) and was passed on by his disciple So Ye-shes dbang-phyug and the latter’s family; it is not recorded in the historiographical literature, where some problems with the linear succession after So Ye-shes dbang-phyug are noted; see gZhon-nu dpal: *Deb ther sngon po*, p. 142.9–17, and Roerich (1976:109). I take this lineage to be the so-called “So tradition” (*so lugs*); for this tradition in the transmission of the trilogy *mDo sgyu sems*, compare Dudjom Rinpoche (1991:616). References to Ma-bdun ras-chen as a disciple of Khro-phu Lo-tsā-ba, Sa-skya Paṇḍita Kun-dga’ rgyal-mtshan and the treasurer-discoverer Guru Chos[-kyi] dbang[-phyug] have not been located until now. However, the biography of Ma-bdun ras-chen written by his disciple gDan-sa Rin-chen-pa and contained in the second volume of the *mDo chen bka’ brgyud gser ’phreng* could yield relevant information; see Appendix I.

there. Performing a *gaṇacakra* [there] his meditation experience increased and [there was] a startling spiritual experience and so forth: seeing numerous signs of a pilgrimage site [he realized] that [this spot] was the cave of [rDo-rje] Ma-bdun-ma. As he stayed there a long time for his practice, his name is known as “Ma-bdun-pa”. At that sacred site he [also] saw the face of the Mahācārya [Padmasambhava].⁴

At one time, when a great black woman appeared, she spoke: “Who am I? Do you recognize me?” As he answered: “I do not know you,” she replied: “You and me, at the time of Guru [Padmasambhava] we have been close friends; I am the hyena-faced *ḍākinī* riding a horse on a black field.” [This was] rDo-rje Ma-bdun-ma [one of the seven Vajra Mothers], bound by oath as a female custodian, who protects the doctrine. As it is said in the [text called] *Grub gzhung*: “rDo-rje Ma-bdun[-ma], hyena-faced, wearing a human skin.” And it is certain, that also this lady, who had uttered the prophecy above, it was just her. It seems that also the [act of] taking her as the principal protector of the family of this [mDo-bo che-ba] tradition, it happened from this time onwards.⁵

Again, after coming [once more] into the presence of the Jina rGod-tshang-pa, he listened to the precepts and counsels of Chos-rje 'Brug-pa (i.e. gTsang-pa rGya-ras) in their entirety and was authorized as the noble heart's son [of rGod-tshang-pa]. From among the eight great sons, who are equal to

⁴ The site of bDe-chen steng was one of the favourite retreat sites of rGod-tshang-pa mGon-po rdo-rje in south-western Tibet and also the place where he met his disciple Or-gyan-pa Rin-chen dpal (1230–1309); for the location of the site and the later meeting, see Ehrhard (1997:128, note 6). During that period the region of Mang-yul sKyid-grong attracted great numbers of yogins of the bKa'-bryud-pa school due to the presence of the famous Avalokiteśvara statue Ārya Va-ti bzang-po, the so-called “Lord of sKyid-grong” (*skyid grong jo bo*); for a description of the pilgrimage of rGod-tshang ras-pa mGon-po rdo-rje to the Buddhist icon and a list of representatives of the different bKa'-bryud-pa schools present there, see Ehrhard (2004a:78–79, note 37). Concerning the identification of the actual site, where Ma-bdun ras-chen had stayed and was blessed by rDo-rje Ma-bdun-ma according to the writings of Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku, see Introduction, note 8.

⁵ The text called *Grub gzhung* or *mChod gzhung* is the main literary source for Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku's treatment of the location and the iconography of the individual Seven Vajra Mothers; see Introduction, notes 9 & 14. In his work on the history of the cult of the group of seven goddesses he includes a discussion of the outer features of rDo-rje Ma-bdun-ma and corrects misspellings concerning iconographical details of the main deity by relying on the text mentioned; see Chos-kyi dbang-phyug: *rDo rje ma bdun ma'i lo rgyus*, fol. 8a/1–3 (*phyis dpal ldan mdo bo che pa'i rigs chos bryud kyi bsrung mar gyur / dred kyi gdong pa can kyang mngon rtogs zur du mi gsal kyang / mchod gzhung du / rdo rje ma bdun dred gdong mi spags g.yogs zhes pa dang don mthun / zhing nag rta ru zhon pa'ang yi ge gzhan du shing sna rta ru zhon pa zhes bris pa ni yig nor te / 'dir zhing nag zhes pa zhing chen po bem po chen po gdan du gting ba'i don yin no*).

him, he is universally known as “Ma-bdun-pa, who is equal to the compassion [of his teacher].” He resided several times in varied mountain hermitages like Ling-nga [Brag], sKu-lha, Śrī gNam-lding, lHa-gdong, Shar-sding, dKar-ye dPal-gyi nags-khrod and so forth, performing mainly his practice [there]. He had accomplished the skill of [the unity of] emptiness [and] compassion and had mastered all the auspicious conditions of saṃsāra and nirvāṇa; he praised the system of the great meditators at secluded sites and he was of great benefit to others through his great compassion that was immeasurable.⁶

In the later part of his life he established sites for spiritual practice in bDe-sgron in [the valley of] sKu-thang [b]Tsum, in Rin-chen spungs-pa in Long-[']phrang, in Brang Ze-mkhar in Byang-ge, in Gur-phu in Mang-tsha, in dPal-gyi ri, the inner land of Gre-zla, in Shar-sgom [the former residence of] Thog-ston Sangs-rgyas, south-west of sPang-zhing, [and] in mDo-bo-che in Phu-lag in Gung-thang. And as the final of his acts of spreading the teaching of the practice lineage by means of the three cycles (i.e. reading, hearing and reflection, renouncing and meditative concentration, and the deeds to be performed) he passed into the Dharmadhātu, the sphere free from proliferations, at the secluded site of mDo-bo-che at the age of 68 years, in the night of the 19th day of the last summer moon; the sky was filled with rainbow tents and there appeared in manifold ways rains of godly flowers and relics like bones, śarīra and so forth: [all this] was said and condensed from what had been executed by his heart’s son gDan-sa Rin-chen[-pa] as a detailed biography.⁷

⁶ With regard to the qualifications of Ma-bdun ras-chen as the disciple of rGod-tshang-pa mGon-po rdo-rje there exist two separate statements; see Rin-chen rnam-rgyal (1437–1557): *rJe rgod tshang pa'i rnam thar rgyal thang ba bde chen rdo rjes mdzad pa la mgur chen 'gas brgyan-pa*, p. 412.1 (*snying rje rang dang mnyam pa ma bdun pa*), and p. 412.7–8 (*shes bya rang dang mnyam pa ma bdun pa*). In another biography of rGod-tshang-pa mGon-po rdo-rje Ma-bdun ras-chen is mentioned only as one of the many disciples immediately after the master had his initial encounter with O-rgyan-pa Rin-chen. No special role is attributed to him in this source; see Sangs-rgyas dar-po (15th/16th cent.): *rGyal ba rgod tshang pa mgon po rdo rje'i rnam par thar pa*, p. 187.7–13 (*gu lung phu ru gdan phebs pa'i tshel der chos rje bas slob ma rnams kyi nang nas brtul zhugs rang dang mnyam pa'i u rgyan rgyal po zhes bya ba'i grub thob de dang mjal ba yin / de nas spud sgra'i ri khrod du byon nas bzbug pas / de dus mkhan po srin po gdong pa'am dge bshes bya bral ba'am / ma bdun pa'am / la rgyud pa'i 'phags pa 'od la sogs pa'i ston sgom phyed dang nyis brgya tsam gyis sgom kbrid mdzas nas ...*). For the places frequented by Ma-bdun ras-chen for his spiritual practice, see note 8.

⁷ The hermitages established by Ma-bdun ras-chen spread throughout the whole region of Mang-yul Gung-thang, from sPang-zhing in the south up to rDzong-dkar in the north, with one site for spiritual practice in the valley of [s]Ku-thang [b]Tsum. Among the locations mentioned I have not yet identified Long-[']phrang, Byang-ge, Mang-tsha

[b]

His heart's son gDan-sa Rin-chen-pa was born in lDing-bzang, a small [stretch of] land in Mang-yul sKyid-grong, as the son of the father Se-zhar 'bum-me and the mother Tre-mo sman-ne. At the age of seven years he met the Lord Ma-bdun-pa and through the power of the awakening of the good propensities, by just encountering [Ma-bdun-pa] his outlook changed. At the age of nine years, after hiding himself from his parents, he went to Ma-bdun [ras-chen]; the lock of hair was cut and he was given the name 'Phags-pa dpal. The Lord Ma-bdun-pa spoke: "The [future] owner of these my scattered books, I hope that he will be it!" Recognizing him as a noble being, who is a proper vessel, he prophesied him [in this way] to be his heart's son. As he observed the guidance [of his teacher] at the age of nine years, wisdom free of proliferations was born in his heart. Following [Ma-bdun ras-chen] as an attendant wherever he went, he heard the complete stream of the initiations, reading[-authorizations] and precepts; and as he fastened them to his spiritual experience, he attained liberation.

At the age of nineteen years he received full ordination from the upādhyāya known as the one from lHo-brag, and in Nya[g]-tshal he heard completely all the explanations and instructions of the tantras *mDo*, *sGyu*, *Sems*, [these] three, from Chos[-kyi] seng[-ge], the physician of Glan, and from Chos-lDan, [these] two. When an [infectious] disease showed up which upon close inspection [had been caused by] a demon from below, he remained in Shar-sding for his practice and by putting together the earlier and later [periods], during six years [in all] he brought to an end the propitiation of [Vajrapāṇi in the form of] rDo-rje gtum-po and was [thus] released [from the sickness].⁸

and Gre-zla. Shar-sgom or Shar-sgam, near the village of sPang-zhing in Mang-yul, had been one of the two residences of Thogs-rdugs Sangs-rgyas (seemingly a variant form of Thog-ston Sangs-rgyas), a direct disciple of Sa-skya Paṇḍita Kun-dga' rgyal-mtshan; see Ehrhard (2004a:284 & 416, note 183). Phu-lag, the region where mDo-bo-che was located, is a nomad region to the north-west of rDzong-dkar, the capital of the Gung-thang rulers; see Everding (2000:73, note 121, and map 6).

⁸ A biography of gDan-sa Rin-chen-pa, written by his disciple Chos-rje ston-pa can be found in the second volume of the *mDo chen bka' bryud gser 'phreng*; see Appendix I. The teacher Chos[-kyi] seng[-ge], who passed the trilogy of *mDo sgyu sems* to gDan-sa Rin-chen-pa, belonged to the Glan family; for two further masters of this family associated with the site known as Nya[g]-tshal, see Dudjom Rinpoche (1991:657 & 668). Compare Dalton (2002:139–140, note 8) for the observation that the Glan family controlled together with the Zur family the Anuyoga tradition up to the 15th century; the earlier lineage was known as the "system of Glan" (*glan lugs*). The place of Shar-sding was already mentioned as one of the hermitages, where Ma-bdun ras-chen followed his spiritual practice. Among the further sites noted in this context, i.e. Ling-nga [Brag], sKu-lha, Śrī gNam-lding, lHa-gdong and dKar-ye dPal-gyi nags-khrod, four can be lo-

In Shar-sgom he stayed for his practice definitely for three years and furthermore in varied [other] sacred sites [as well]. After the Lord Ma-bdun-pa had passed away he maintained all his residences by developing them further. When he founded a monastery at the secluded site of Shar-phu in [the valley of] Lan-'de, he named it "bKra-shis sding", [a site] which is these days called lCog[s-ga] ri; and he erected Rin-chen sgang in the upper part of [s]Ku-thang [b]Tsum, Don-grub gling, the monastery of Bul-[']drud, Rin-chen gling, the monastery of Be-zho in the vicinity of Shar-sgom and so on, establishing sites for spiritual practice [there].

Having set an immeasurable multitude of disciples on the good path of benefit and happiness by the three [cycles] of explanation, practice and deeds, his final act was the passing away into the Dharmadhātu at the sacred site of lCogs[-ga] ri on the 13th day of the first summer moon in the monkey year.⁹

[c]

The incomparable Chos-rje ston-pa, the heart's son of gDan-sa Rin-chen[-pa] 'Phags-pa dpal: he was born in the [temple of] 'Bar-ba lha-khang [located] in the centre of Mang-yul sKyid-grong as the son of the father Don-grub rgyal-mtshan and the mother Blon-mo Ye-shes sde, [these] two. At the time of asking for blessings from the Lord Ma-bdun-pa, [the master] prophesied: "By this there will come a benefit for the beings!"; at the age of five years the lock of hair was cut and he was given likewise the name "Blessed Vajra".

cated geographically. The first one, Ling-nga or Ling-ba Brag[-dmar rdzong] is known as one of the places, where the great yogin Mi-la ras-pa had stayed and is situated in bKra-shis sgang; see Ehrhard (2004a:288 & 432, note 214). sKu-lha [dPal-rdzong] or [Mang-yul] sKu-lha are alternative names for a sacred mountain, located near Ri-bo dpal-'bar, in the centre of Mang-yul; see Everding (2000:483, note 1197, and map 5). Compare Sørensen & Hazod (2007:131–132) for the topographical description of the dominance of the Tshal-pa bKa'-brgyud-pa school during that period up to the mountain region of [Jo-bo] sKu-rgyal. lHa-gdong or lHa-sdong is a region to the south of rDzong-dkar; see Everding (2000:545, note 1406). dKar-ye dPal-gyi nags-khrod, a well-frequented hermitage also in later times, lies in sPang-zhing and was originally founded by one Dharmamitra; see Ehrhard (2004a:284 & 417, note 185); for the latter site compare also notes 25 & 27 below.

⁹ The monastery of bKra-shis sding, later known as lCog[s-ga] ri, was thus the first establishment of the mDo-chen tradition in the La-[l]de[bs] valley and the site where gDan-sa Rin-chen-pa passed away. Next to a second hermitage in [s]Ku-thang [b]Tsum he developed the presence of the tradition in sPang-zhing by founding a monastery near Shar-sgom, a favourite residence of both himself and Ma-bdun ras-chen. No further information on the region of Bul-[']drud is available, where gDan-sa Rin-chen-pa established another monastic settlement.

When he was eight years old he went on pilgrimage together with his parents to [the stūpa] “All Trees” (i.e. Svayambhū) in Nepal and to lHa-sa, [which is like] a glorious Dharmacakra. He was a contemporary of the great mChims Nam-mkha’ grags-pa (1210–1285), [the seventh abbot] of sNar-thang.

In the presence of the Lord Ma-bdun-pa he observed the guidance [of his teacher] at the age of thirteen years, seeing nakedly the own face of the Dharmakāya, free from proliferations, [i.e.] in its primordial state; [and] he listened to countless reading[-authorizations], initiations, guidances [and] instructions of the old and new tantras. After the Lord Ma-bdun-pa had passed away, he was ordained in the presence of Chos-rje gDan-sa-pa [’Phags-pa dpal]; he listened completely to the remaining instructions and acted as [his] attendant. At [the monastery of] Yang-thog in Gung-thang he received the training of a Buddhist novice from the upādhyāya ’Od-zer dpal and the full ordination [of a Buddhist monk] from the upādhyāya Sher-pa and from [the teacher] Ding-ston. From dKon[-mchog] tshul[-khrims], the reverend scholar of Zur-mtsho [in La-stod lHo], he heard on many occasions the cycles of the bKa’-ma [transmission] of the Early Translations and the instructions of the old and new [tantras]. Further on, he attended in an impartial way upon many noble scholars and Siddhas and performed extensively the listening of the Sūtra[- and] Mantra[yāna]. In many mountain hermitages, which were isolated for [the realization of] the meaning of what had been studied, he resided for the practice several times for [a period of] three years, [the entrance] covered up with clay and his speech shut up, and [once] for seven years in the upper and lower monasteries of Shar-sgom and Be-zho; having bound a Nāgā demoness to an oath, who was staying there, [the demoness] was known as “The One of the Jewel Island”.¹⁰

After gDan-sa-pa [’Phags-pa dpal] had passed away, [Chos-rje ston-pa] maintained all the residences, including mDo-bo-che; and when he founded a monastery on the side of a mountain in the upper part of [the valley of] Lan’de, it was known as “dPal-ldan sding”. There always came together

¹⁰ A biography of Chos-rje ston-pa, written by one Ye-shes rdo-rje, is available in the second volume of the *mDo chen bka’ brgyud gser ’phreng*; see Appendix I. The vihāra known as ’Bar-ba lha-khang in the centre of sKyid-grong was regarded as one of the border taming temples of the bSam-yas vihāra; see Ehrhard (2004a:280 & 398, note 154) and Vitali (2007:291–292). The site of Yang-thog in Gung-thang is known as the birthplace of Nag-tsho Lo-tsā-ba Tshul-khrims rgyal-ba (b. 1011) and the monastery established by him there was supervised for a period of four years by Chag Lo-tsā-ba Chos-rje dpal (1197–1264); see Ehrhard (2004a:289 & 436, note 223). It must have been around that time when Chos-rje ston-pa received his training there from the aforementioned teachers. No further details are known about dKon-mchog tshul-khrims from Zur-mtho, a small principality in south-western Tibet, bordering Gung-thang.

around 500 great meditators, male and female, and on special days more than 1,000 people. Having executed as a pair the continuous turning of the Wheel of Dharma of the profound and vast [doctrine] and the practice for the benefit of beings, in the end he passed away in dPal-ldan sdings on the 14th day of the third Tibetan month in the bird year.¹¹

[d]

At that point [of the transmission]: although there are found in the old scripture of the *mDo chen bka' brgyud gser 'phreng* from Chos-rje ston-pa onwards the biographies and so forth of Bla-ma Byang-pa, Bla-ma Chos[-kyi] seng[-ge], Bla-ma Chos[-kyi] rgyal[-mtshan] [and] Bya-btang Śākya dpal [[*gloss*: it has to be understood that Bya-btang Śākya dpal, who is contained in the transmission of [the teachings of] the “Primordial Pure” [and] the “Spontaneous Given” [according to the] Byang-gter [tradition] and the *rDor sems snying thig* [of Rig-'dzin Kun-skyong gling-pa (1396–1477)], and this person, [these] two, are not the same one]], as a description of a real transmission [lineage] it becomes from Chos-rje ston-pa onwards [the succession of] Sangs-rgyas dbon-po, bSod-nams dbang-phyug [and] bSod-nams snying-po; thus [the biographies] which are clear [in the text mentioned] above are not dealt with at length [here].

Up to bSod-nams snying-po it was apart from a mere teaching lineage no family tradition. Concerning bSod-nams snying-po, it seems to be mentioned in some “Records of Teachings Received” of the teachers [mentioned] above that he belonged to Nub-dgon [in La-stod Byang]; it may be like that, but as the biographies of these [last-named] three teachers did not appear as something having been set down in writing, I was not able to write [about] them [here].¹²

¹¹ The monastery of dPal-ldan sding(s) was the second monastery of the mDo-chen tradition in the La-[l]de[bs] valley. After its establishment in the 13th century, when it attracted a great number of practitioners, it fell into oblivion in later times and was only renovated in the 18th century by 'Gyur-med 'Phrin-las bstan-'dzin, also known as dPal-lding-pa; see note 42.

¹² The second volume of the *mDo chen bka' brgyud gser 'phreng* contains the biographical accounts of Bla-ma Byang-pa, Bla-ma Chos[-kyi] seng[-ge], Bla-ma Chos[-kyi] rgyal[-mtshan] and Bya-btang Śākya dpal (and three of the latter's writings); see Appendix I. The transmission of the Māyājāla cycle by later members of the mDo-chen tradition as mentioned in the “Thob yig of the 17th Century” is the same one as noted here by Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku; see Appendix II:B.3.a & F.8.a (Chos-rje Ma-bdun ras-chen – Thugs-sras gDan-sa Rin-po-che – mNyam-med Chos-rje ston-pa – Chos-rje Sangs-rgyas dbon-po – Chos-rje dBang-phyug mtshan-can – Chos-rje bSod-nams snying-po). Concerning the role of Chos-rje bSod-nams snying-po as the author of the main ritual text book of that particular transmission, see Introduction, note 17. The person of Bya-btang

[III]

[a]

Like there appeared the succession [of the individual members] of the mDo-chen tradition of the Gur family from Gur-ston lHun-grub bkra-shis onwards [[*gloss*: concerning “Gur” [it comes from] Gur-phu, and “mDo-chen” [it comes from] mDo-chen in Phu-lag [in Gung-thang]: one must understand that [these labels] became known as proper names from the designations of the [individual] monasteries]], now the way of this [transmission]:

As the son of the father bSod-nams ’dul-le from the paternal line called the ’Ur-rtsa in Western Tibet, possessing distinguished glory, and the mother Chos-skyong skyid-lde, this Gur-ston lHun-grub bkra-shis was born in Byang-phugs, a place [near the lake] dPal-khud. The great scholar of the Zhi-byed tradition called Bla-ma Zur-khang-pa of Glang-’khor [in] Ding-ri made the prophecy: “This one will become a noble person!” Under Chos-rje bSod-nams dbang-phyug the lock of hair was cut [and] he received the name lHun-grub bkra-shis. At the age of fifteen years he observed the guidance of the Mahāmudrā [doctrine] and thus saw nakedly the wisdom [mind] free from proliferations; from the all-knowing Mus-srad-pa dPal-ldan seng-ge he took the full ordination [and the one as a novice] at once. He approached on many occasions scholars and siddhas including the upādhyāya Don-grub shes-rab from ’Om-phug in Gung-thang, rTsa-brgyad-pa rDo-rje seng-ge, Chos-rje dBon-seng-pa [and] Bya-brtang Śākya dpal, performing the listening and reflection of the teaching methods of the old and new Sūtra[- and] Mantra[yāna] like an ocean.¹³

Śākya dpal mentioned in the interlineary gloss, who transmitted Byang-gter teachings and those of the treasure-discoverer Rig-’dzin Kun-skyong gling-pa, is known as one of the teachers of Nub-dgon Chos-rgyal Byams-pa Chos rgyal-mtshan (1511–1571); see Grangs-chen Rab-’byams-pa (16th cent.): *rje bisun bla ma dam pa byams pa chos rgyal mtshan dpal bzang po’i rnam par thar pa ngo mtshar dad pa’i shing rta ’dren byed*, fols. 48b/8–49a/1. Not much is available on the teachers associated with Nub-dgon, a monastery located to the north of Gung-thang near the gTsang-po river; concerning Nub-dgon chen-po Kham[s]-lung-pa Padma dBang-gi rgyal-po (1657–1731), see note 34.

¹³ Two biographies of Gur-ston lHun-grub bkra-shis, written by his disciple Seng-ge dpal bzang-po are available (one written in ’Om-phug); see Appendix I. ’Om-phug in Gung-thang was a site where Nag-tsho Lo-tsā-ba had followed his spiritual practice and where in the 13th century a “teaching seminary” (*bshad grva*) had been established by a female member of the Gung-thang ruling family; see Ehrhard (2004a:289 & 436, note 224). The teacher Don-grub shes-rab belonged to this monastic institution. Among the other teachers of Gur-ston lHun-grub bkra-shis we can identify Mus-srad-pa dPal-ldan seng-ge, a member of the teaching lineage of the Siddha Dar-’phyar (12th/13th cent.); this tantric master was a contemporary of Sa-skya Paṇḍita Kun-dga’ rgyal-mtshan and is known to have discovered his own treasure works, including the cycle *Yang gsang khros*

In mDo-bo-che he heard several times the instructions of the bKa'-brgyud [transmission] of his own system from Chos-rje bSod-nams snying-po, who had been prophesied by the Guru [Padmasambhava]. He performed austerities for many years in many varied places of solitude like mDo-bo-che, Long-[]phrang, dKar-ye [dPal-gyi nags-khrod] [and] Khra-tums and obtained the fruit of his practice. He was linked to the Dharma-rāja of mNga'-ris Gung-thang Khri-rgyal bSod-nams lde (1371–1404) [by the relationship of] donor and spiritual preceptor. He extended greatly the development [of the mDo-chen tradition] by holding the seat of mDo-bo-che, renovating all the convents and monasteries belonging to [the lineage of] Ma-bdun-pa, and founding [new] schools for practice. And he demonstrated clairvoyance, miracles and inconceivable signs of accomplishment; after he had used the Guardian of the Commandment, the Protector of the Doctrine (i.e. rDo-rje Ma-bdun-ma) like an attendant and had kept up extensively the activity for his disciples, he passed away into the sphere of peace in the monastery of dPal mDo-bo-che.¹⁴

The biographies up to this point were set down here as a summary [and] in a rough way. Those wishing to understand them in detail, they should look it up from where it is clear in the two volumes of the old scripture of the *mDo chen bka' brgyud gser 'phreng*.

[b]

That lHun-grub bkra-shis himself [either] has remained a bhikṣu for his [spiritual] support, or that [otherwise] there has appeared a son [to him], as [these facts] are not clear in his biography, someone with the name Man-tradhara mGon-po dpal, who was like a Dharma son [to him] and either the younger brother of lHun-grub bkra-shis or someone [in the succession of]

pa. The name of Mus-sred-pa Kun-mkhyen dPal-ldan seng-ge and his position in this particular transmission is also mentioned in the genealogical record of the rDo-dmar-ba, another important Buddhist family from south-western Tibet; see Kun-bzang chos-dpal: *rNam grol risangs rdo dmar ba'i gdung rabs*, pp. 47.12–48.3. According to the “Thob yig of the 17th Century” this particular teaching was propagated by Nub-dgon Chos-rgyal Byams-pa Chos rgyal-mtshan and subsequently also reached mDo-chen-pa Nor-bu bde-chen; see Appendix II:D.2.g.

¹⁴ For a biographical account of the ruler Khri-rgyal bSod-nams lde, see Tshe-dbang nor-bu: *Bod rje lha btsad po'i gdung rabs mnga' ris smad gung thang du ji ltar byung ba'i tshul deb ther dvang shel 'phrul gyi me long*, pp. 117.22–121.16; compare Everding (2000: 115–123). He is especially known for his support of the rNying-ma-pa treasure-discoverer Rig-'dzin rGod-ldem 'phru-can (1337–1406) and the founding of the rDzong-dkar chos-sde, the first monastery of the Bo-dong-pa school in Mang-yul Gung-thang in 1394. No mention of his spiritual connection with Gur-ston lHun-grub bkra-shis and the monastery of dPal mDo-bo-che is made in this historiographical source.

uncle and nephew, the biography of such a person as well, in the form of detailed notice, it is not known [to me].

[c]

After him [came] Chos-rje Kun-dga' gzi-brjid-pa: although there is the rumour that there exists an old scripture of his biography [including the names of] father, mother, birthplace and so forth, I have not seen it in the past. If one mentions here just a fraction [of his life-story] like what is known as the oral tradition [it is as follows]: He was a contemporary of the Dharmarāja of [mNga'-ris] Gung-thang Khri lHa-dbang rgyal-mtshan (1404–1464). He listened to countless instructions of ripening [empowerments] and liberating [guidances] of the Sūtra[- and] Mantra[yāna] of the old and new [translations] from countless mentors, who were impartial scholars and siddhas, including the Mantradhara mGon-po dpal, the incomparable lHun-grub rin-chen, the Mantradhara from Drang-so [in La-stod lHo], [i.e.] the treasure-discoverer Śākya bzang-po, and the Siddha gTsang-smyon Heruka (1452–1507). And among the great sons, [who are] the heart's disciples of gTsang-smyon Heruka, he became one in the series of the six great teachers who have attained inseparable faith [in the master].¹⁵

He stayed in mDo-bo-che itself [which was] his main residence; and he kept up the residence of the summer and winter [periods] also in the monasteries of the gorges, like “bKra-shis sdings” [or] lCogs[-ga] ri and so forth. Up to that time he was only a bhikṣu following the [rules of] the vinaya; in the latter part of his life the Mantradhara Che-mchog[-pa] was born. It is known that there also appeared lineages of disciples in great number, including [the one of] Nam-mkha' rdo-rje.¹⁶

¹⁵ A biographical account of the ruler Khri lHa-dbang rgyal-mtshan can also be found in the work of Tshe-dbang nor-bu; see the text (as in note 14), pp. 122.15–124.19, and Everding (2000:125–131). Once again there is no mention of teachers associated with the mDo-bo-che tradition in this text. No information on the master lHun-grub rin-chen is available; concerning the treasure-discoverer Śākya bzang-po of the rNying-ma pa school, also known as the First Yol-mo-ba sPrul-sku, see Ehrhard (2007a:25–29). For the contact between Kun-dga' gzi-brjid and gTsang-smyon Heruka, who had been invited to dPal mDo-bo-che during his stay in Mang-yul Gung-thang, see sNa-tshogs rang-grol: *gTsang smyon heruka phyogs thams cad las rnam par rgyal ba'i rnam thar rdo rje theg pa'i gsal byed nyi ma'i snying po*, p. 99.3–4 (*de nas spyid [= dpyid] smad mi phyed dad thob kyī bla chen drug gi ya ba mdo bo che'i gdan sa / chos rje kun dga' gzi brjid bya ba dpon slob 'khor bcas kyis / pha grub thob chen po mdo bo cher gdan drangs bsnyen bskur kyī [= kyis] thugs rangs par byas na gdul bya rnams la skabs su bab pa'i dbang dang gdam [= gdams] ngag gis tshim par mdzad*).

¹⁶ A description of the activities of Kun-dga' gzi-brjid in maintaining the monastery of dPal mDo-bo-che in Gung-thang and looking after the “monasteries in the south” (*lho phyogs kyī dgon pa*) is contained in the biography of his nephew Nam-mkha' rdo-rje

[d]

The Mantradhara Che-mchog-pa was born in the surroundings of lCogs[-ga] ri [at a place] today known as lHas-chung. From [the age of] three years onwards he knew reading and writing. At the time of eight years he left a footprint visibly on a stone, which one can obviously still encounter today. He relied many times on noble kalyāṇamitras, including the father Chos-rje Kun-dga' gzi-brjid, the treasure-discoverers mChog-ldan mgon-po (1497–1531) and bsTan-gnyis gling-pa (1480–1535), [and] dKar-po Kun-dga' grags-pa, a heart's son of [the treasure-discoverer] Padma gling-pa (1450–1521). Also the line [of transmission] of the ripening [initiations] and liberating [instructions] of [the cycle] *Thugs rje chen po ye shes 'od mchog*, which had come forth as a treasure of the reincarnation Dri-med kun-dga' (b. 1347), it emerged from him onwards. He was a contemporary of the Dhar-marāja [of mNga'-ris Gung-thang] bDud-'dul mgon-po lde (i.e. Kun-bzang Nyi-zla grags-pa [1514–1560]).¹⁷

The treasure-discoverer mChog-ldan mgon-po had urged the ruler, the king of [mNga'-ris Gung-thang], to renovate the vihāra of Byams[-pa] sprin, [a temple] which suppressed the [element of] wind; and as for the managing

(1486–1553); see Ehrhard (2000:56). This latter teacher had met his paternal uncle for the first time in the year 1496 and received the vows of a Buddhist novice and the religious name Kun-dga' from him in dPal mDo-bo-che; studies continued then under Kun-dga' gzi-brjid in the valley of La-[l]de[bs]. The nephew became subsequently known as Chos-rje Nam-mkha' rdo-rje and was responsible for introducing the teaching traditions of the 'Ba'-ra-ba bKa'-brgyud-pa school to Mang-yul Gung-thang; see note 22. Although one might identify the disciple of Kun-dga' gzi-brjid called Nam-mkha' rdo-rje with this nephew, I would take him rather to be [Jam-dbyangs] Nam-mkha' rdo-rje, a teacher from the rDzong-dkar chos-sde; on him, see Ehrhard (2000:56).

¹⁷ Kun-bzang Nyi-zla grags-pa alias bDud-'dul mgon-po lde is known for his involvement with masters of the rNying-ma-pa school, including Rig-'dzin mChog-ldan mgon-po, Rig-'dzin bsTan-gnyis gling-pa and dKar-po Kun-dga' grags-pa, the same persons as mentioned as the teachers of Che-mchog-pa; see the biographical account of the ruler in the text of Tshe-dbang nor-bu (as in note 14), p. 137.11–18, and Everding (2000:159–160). Concerning the spiritual career of Rig-'dzin mChog-ldan mgon-po, the encounters with his teacher dKar-po Kun-dga' grags-pa and the importance of the latter's journey to Mang-yul Gung-thang for his student's visit, see Ehrhard (2008:66–71). According to the "Thob yig of the 17th Century" the transmission of the treasure cycle *Thugs rje chen po ye shes 'od mchog* of Dri-med kun-dga' passed through dKon-mchog rdo-rje, one of the two sons of Che-mchog-pa, and reached later members of the family like Nor-bu bde-chen and rGyal-sras seng-ge; see Appendix II:A.4.a & B.3.b. According to the relevant sections of the actual reading-authorizations it included also the transmission of the biography of the Indian siddha Mitrayogin. A manuscript of a two volume set of the treasure cycle originating from sKyid-grong contains this particular biography, written at the behest of Che-mchog-pa's son dKon-mchog rdo-rje; see Dri-med Kun-dga': *Thugs rje chen po ye shes 'od mchog*, vol. 1, p. 51.3.

of this [undertaking] and as the person holding the residence [of the vihāra] he invested the Mantradhara Che-mchog-pa. [The master thus] maintained jointly the [former] residence of the Siddha O-rgyan-pa [Rin-chen dpal] (1230–1309), [called] Shel-ri dPal-gyi nags-ljongs, and Byams-pa sprin, the great miraculously manifested vihāra, which tames [regions] beyond [the border].¹⁸ And he erected [sacred items] like the especially exalted golden statue of Che-mchog Heruka, which remained in the teachers' quarters at Nyi-lhod in [the valley of] [b]Tsum. He composed [religious works] like a detailed exposition of the choice [of instructions] of the *sGyu 'phrul [drva ba]* [with the title] “Treasure-house of Scripture [and] Reasoning”, [and] an admonition to the place [of the future birth] and so forth. By the Dharmarāja of mNga'-ris [Gung-thang] he was authorized as head-priest, [and] there were many lineages of disciples, and for example also Byams-pa Chos rgyal-mtshan (1511–1571) from Nub-dgon [in La-stod Byang] heard some cycles of the *sGyu 'phrul [drva ba]* [from him].¹⁹

On the occasion when the treasure-discoverer bsTan-gnyis gling-pa was taking a profound treasure from Ri-bo dpal-'bar, he urged [the treasure-discoverer] again and again [to do so], and because of the circumstances of the angry revenge of [the deity] rGya-gar-ma, the Master of the Treasure [of

¹⁸ The meeting of Rig-'dzin mChog-ldan mgon-po with the most influential religious persons in Mang-yul Gung-thang during his visit in 1526/27 and the way he entrusted them with the task of erecting and renovating religious buildings—including the nomination of Che-mchog-pa for the vihāra of Byams-pa sprin—is described in the treasure-discoverer's autobiography; see his work *sPrul sku rig 'dzin mchog ldan mgon po'i rnam thar*, fols. 237b/2–239a/3, and Ehrhard (2000:34–35). The site of Shel-ri dPal-gyi nags-ljongs in sPang-zhing was one of three places associated with O-rgyan-pa Rin-chen dpal in the region of Mang-yul; see Ehrhard (2004a:284 & 415–416, note 181).

¹⁹ The work of Che-mchog-pa on the Māyājāla cycle is referred to by rGyal-sras seng-ge and his son Padma rgya-mtsho in their respective records of the transmission of this cycle; see “Thob yig of the 17th Century”, p. 340.3 (*sngags 'chang che mchog pas mdzad pa'i gdab ka rgyas pa'i rnam bshad*), and *ibid.*, p. 386.5–6 (*sngags 'chang che mchog rdo rjes mdzad pa'i gdab ka rgyas pa'i rnam bshad lung rigs gter mdzod*); compare Appendix II:B.3.a & C.1.a. The studies of Byams-pa Chos rgyal-mtshan are mentioned in the biography of the master from Nub-dgon. They took place during a pilgrimage to the 'Phags-pa lha-khang, the temple of the Ārya Va-ti bzang-po, and to the vihāra of Byams-pa sprin around the year 1533; see the text of Grangs-chen Rab-'byams-pa (as in note 12), fols. 23b/6–24a/5. Byams-pa Chos rgyal-mtshan was entitled on that occasion by Che-mchog-pa to act as a “master of the old mantras” (*sngags rnying ma'i bdag po*); for an exposition of the *sGyu 'phrul drva ba* teachings by Byams-pa Chos rgyal-mtshan at Nub-dgon in the year 1553, compare *ibid.*, fol. 50b/5–7. This master is generally known as the “secret teacher” (*gsang ba'i bla ma*) of Byang-bdag bKra-shis stobs-rgyal (1550–1602), an important lineage holder of the Northern Treasure tradition. bKra-shis stobs-rgyal obtained the transmission of the mentioned teachings at Nub-dgon in the year 1556; see *ibid.*, fol. 57b/2–5.

Ri-bo dpal-'bar], he was struck by sickness on the way [back] and passed away in dGun-mda'. When a prayer [containing] the essence of his life was requested by the sons and the disciples [of Che-mchog-pa] from the great treasure-discoverer [bsTan-gnyis gling-pa], [the following verses] were granted:

The primordial Buddha, [the Dharmakāya], unborn from the beginning, [and] the wisdom, radiant by itself, [the Saṃbhoga]kāya, unobstructed from the beginning—[who is] the Heruka, manifesting the spontaneously given indivisibility [of these two]: to the feet of Che-mchog rdo-rje I offer my prayers!

Who had realized nakedly the view of what is originally pure, the way [things] really are, [and] who had encountered the face of tutelary deities [and] gods, the wisdom, radiant by itself—exhibiting the marks and signs of having mastered [the acts of] serving and realizing [the deities]: to you, king among the Mantradharas, I offer my prayers!

With many of the highest among the beings [propounding the teachings] of the Vajrayāna he had scrutinized the manifold instructions of [the stages of] generating and completing—with devotion and faith holding [onto them] like [onto something visualized] above one's head: to you, king among those who have completed [all] the initiations, I offer my prayers!

Towards the very secret [doctrine of] Ati[yoga], the essence of [all] the instructions, he had his [spiritual] share, thus realizing the profound intention [of it]—[to whom Reality-as-such] has become directly visible [and] nakedly clear, [just by mere] intellectual analysis, faith and devotion: to you, ruler [of the doctrine which is] profound and clear, I offer my prayers!

At the time when he displayed [the body constituted of] the four perishable elements as the illusionary body, by the stages of the dissolution [of the four elements] and so forth he, realized them as the Great Clear Light—who at the time of the explanation of the four *ha-hu* and the one *ha* rested in [the state of] the intention of the fivefold [wisdom]: to him I offer my prayers!

Having rested in the dimension, which is the intention of the fivefold wisdom, from the cloudless sky, there fell down flowers like rain—who had scattered an assemblage of offerings for

the gods, including rainbows and light, resting in the dimension of Samantabhadra: to him I offer my prayers!²⁰

Not long after this the rebirth [of Che-mchog-pa] was clearly born as the son of the treasure-discoverer [bsTan-gnyis gling-pa], his name being known as Tshe-dbang bSod-nams rgyal-po. At that time there existed seven monasteries owned by the mDo-chen-pa [tradition], [each] mother [institution] linked with its [individual] branches: [1.] mDo-chen along with its branches [in] Phu-lag, [2.] Gur-phu [and] Khra-tums, [3.] Shel-ri [and] Byams[-pa] sprin, [4.] Shar-sgom [and] Rin-chen gling, [5.] Shar-sding [and] Shug-khrod, [6.] lCog[s-ga] ri [and] dPal-sding, [7.] Rin[-chen] sgang [and] Long-[]phrang. Among these [the monastery of] Shel-ri, which was linked with Byams[-pa] sprin, it had been donated as a share of his reward to the rebirth [Tshe-dbang] bSod-nams rgyal-po; it is obvious that from this time onwards the lineage of the grandsons (i.e. successors) of the treasure-discoverer [bsTan-gnyis gling-pa] had appeared and the custom of their keeping the residence [of Byams-pa sprin] had originated.²¹

²⁰ The journey of Rig-'dzin bsTan-gnyis gling-pa to the sacred mountain Ri-bo dpal-'bar and the circumstances surrounding the discovery of a treasure at that site in Mang-yul is described in the treasure-discoverer's autobiography; see *sPrul sku bstan gnyis gling pa padma tshe dbang rgyal po'i rnam thar*, fols. 68b/2–70a/6. Before that event he was invited by Che-mchog-pa to La-[]de[bs], where he gave teachings in the upper and lower parts of the valley. After returning to Gung-thang Rig-'dzin bsTan-gnyis gling-pa received the news about the death of Che-mchog-pa, who had accompanied him during the treasure hunt and composed a song lamenting his passing away; see *ibid.*, fol. 70a/6–b/4. The prayer commemorating the life of Che-mchog-pa is not contained in the treasure-discoverer's autobiography. For further details concerning the invitation of Rig-'dzin bsTan-gnyis gling-pa to Mang-yul Gung-thang by the ruler Kun-bzang Nyi-zla grags-pa and the discovery of the treasure at Ri-bo dpal-'bar in the summer of 1534, see Everding (2000:563–568) and Everding (2004:275–276).

²¹ The genealogy of the descendants of Rig-'dzin bsTan-gnyis gling-pa, starting with the latter's son Tshe-dbang bSod-nams rgyal-po, who was regarded as an incarnation of Che-mchog-pa, can be reconstructed with the help of another chronicle of Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku; see Chos-kyi dbang-phyug: *gTer dbon rig 'dzin brgyud pa'i gdung rabs*, fols. 7a/2 ff. For the individual members of that family from Tshe-dbang bSod-nams rgyal-po up to Rig-'dzin 'Phrin-las bdud-'joms (1726–1789), the great-uncle of Chos-kyi dbang-phyug, compare Ehrhard (2007a:40–42). The list of seven monasteries and their branches in the 16th century documents the greatest extension of the mDo-chen tradition in Mang-yul Gung-thang. The main monasteries were: mDo-chen and Gur-phu in Gung-thang, Shel-ri, Shar-sgom and Shar-sding in Mang-yul, lCog[s-ga] ri La-[]de[bs] and Rin-chen sgang in [b]Tsum. Concerning Shar-sding and Shug-khrod it should be mentioned that they were located in sKyid-grong proper and in the relevant pilgrimage guide books they are mentioned at the end of the list of the sacred sites to be visited in the village (located in the immediate vicinity of Khams-gsum rnam-rgyal, the castle of the Gung-thang rulers); see Ehrhard (2004a:161 & 401–402, note 161).

[e]

To the Mantradhara Che-mchog rdo-rje were born the sons Don-yod rdo-rje and dKon-mchog rdo-rje, [these] two. The two brothers, they heard on many occasions profound teachings from their father, the Mantradhara Che-mchog rdo-rje, and from [teachers] like Rab-'byams-pa dKon-mchog bsam-grub, a scholar and siddha of the Bo-dong-pa [tradition], the treasure-discoverers mChog-ldan mgon-po and bsTan-gnyis gling-pa, [and] Chos-rje Nam-mkha' rdo-rje (1486–1553), a holder of the system of the 'Ba'-ra-ba bKa'-brgyud-pa]. The older brother maintained [the residences in the north] such as mDo-bo-che, and the younger brother [the residences in the south] such as lCog[s-ga] ri, the mother [institution] and its branches, [i.e.] bDe-sgron, Rin[-chen] sgang and so forth.²²

[f]

To the Mantradhara dKon-mchog rdo-rje was born the son Nam-mkha' lhun-grub. From [the age of] eight years onwards he performed the [acts of] approaching [and] realizing [the personal deity]. He relied on the father [together with his elder] brother and [on teachers] like Rab-'byams-pa [Byams-pa] phun-tshogs [from] gNas (1503–1581), the incomparable Chos-dbang rgyal-mtshan (1484–1549) and Gur-ston Nam-mkha' rdo-rje [from] Rin[-chen] sgang. He founded gSang-sngags bDe-chen gling, the teachers' quarters in 'Brog; and it is furthermore known that he erected about seven vi-hāras [of the mDo-chen-pa tradition], including dGon-dkar Zil-gnon gling of Bral-sgang, Kun-dga' gling of mKhar-bang [and] the actual monastery of [Nyi-lhod in sKu-thang] [b]Tsum.²³

²² The teacher Rab-'byams-pa dKon-mchog bsam-grub might have been affiliated with the monastery of mNgon-dga', an influential institution of the Bo-dong-pa school, situated to the south-west of rDzong-dkar. For other Bo-dong-pa masters from mNgon-dga', who were active in Mang-yul Gung-thang, see Ehrhard (2000:14–16). Chos-rje Nam-mkha' rdo-rje was a nephew of Kun-dga' gzi-brjid and thus a cousin of both Don-yod rdo-rje and dKon-mchog rdo-rje; for a full description of his life, especially in regard to making available Buddhist block prints in Mang-yul Gung-thang, see Ehrhard (2000:51–66). After receiving the teachings of the 'Ba'-ra-ba bKa'-brgyud-pa school from Nam-mkha' rgyal-mtshan (1475–1530) in Central Tibet he proceeded to La-[l]de[bs] in the year 1527 and among his first disciples there were his relatives Don-yod rdo-rje and dKon-mchog rdo-rje. One of the teaching sessions conducted there took place at lCog[s-ga] ri, identified in the biography of Chos-rje Nam-mkha' rdo-rje as a former residence of Atiśa Dipamkārāśrījñāna (980–1055); see Ehrhard (2000:58–59). The statement concerning the monasteries of the mDo-chen tradition in the south implies that the branch monasteries in [b]Tsum were under the administration of the mother institution in La-[l]de[bs].

²³ For full descriptions of the lives of Chos-dbang rgyal-mtshan, another Bo-dong-pa teacher associated with the monastery of mNgon-dga', and of Rab-'byams-pa Byams-pa

[g]

Among the nine sons, which were born to him, five died due to black smallpox. There remained 'Jigs-bral, Thon-smyon, Nam[-mkha'] seng[-ge], together with rGyal-mtshan; and although up to this [time] there had existed only one teachers' quarter (i.e. 'Broq bla-brang), thereafter it was divided. As 'Jigs-bral and Thon-smyon, [these] two, resided in the lower teachers' quarters, and Nam[-mkha'] seng[-ge] and rGyal-mtshan, [these] two, in the upper teachers' quarters, from then onwards [their respective residences] were known as the "Upper and Lower Teachers' Quarters".

Nam-mkha' seng-ge laid newly the foundations of the Upper Teachers' Quarters, and he was a contemporary of the ruler [of mNga'-ris Gung-thang] Khri bSod-nams dbang-phyug lde (1577–1627). He approached as mentors his father Nam-mkha' lhun-grub, [Tshe-dbang] bSod-nams rgyal-po, [who is] the embodiment of [Che-mchog-pa of] Byams[-pa] sprin, the reincarnation Nam-mkha' brgya-byin [and] his reincarnation, the Vidyādhara Yol-mo-ba bsTan-'dzin nor-bu (1598–1644), [together with] the latter's younger brother sGam-smyon Phyag-rdor nor-bu (d. 1658).²⁴

phun-tshogs from gNas, a village to the north-east of sKyid-grong, see Ehrhard (2000: 23–50) and Ehrhard (in press c). Both of these masters were active in producing Buddhist block prints. In the biography of Chos-dbang rgyal-mtshan the list of the disciples of the Bo-dong-pa teacher also contains the name of the father of Nam-mkha' lhun-grub; see dKon-mchog rgyal-dbang: *mTshan ldan bla ma dam pa mnyam med chos dbang rgyal mtshan gyi rnam par thar pa*, fol. 109a/6 (*cog ri'i gdan sa bla ma dkon mchog rdo rje*). Nam-mkha' lhun-grub himself is mentioned among the disciples of gNas Rab-'byams-pa Byams-pa phun-tshogs when the latter one transmitted in the year 1574 the treasure cycle *Bla ma dgongs pa 'dus* of Rig-'dzin Sangs-rgyas gling-pa (1340–1396); see the autobiography *mKhas grub chen po byams pa phun tshogs kyi rnam thar*, fol. 91a/3–6. I have no further information on Gur-ston Nam-mkha' rdo-rje, obviously a member of the family residing in sKu-thang [b]Tsum. Concerning the site of 'Broq, it is located in La-[l]de[bs] and known as another one of the former residences of Atiṣa Dipamkārāśrījñāna; see Ehrhard (2004:289 & 442, note 235). Among the regions, where the aforementioned three of seven vihāras were founded by Nam-mkha' lhun-grub, the one of Bral-sgang has not yet been identified. The temple of mKhar-bang was another foundation in the La-[l]de[bs] valley; see Ehrhard (2004a:96).

²⁴ A biographical account of the ruler Khri bSod-nams dbang-phyug lde is contained in the historiographical work of Tshe-dbang nor-bu; see the text (as in note 14), pp. 142.7–144.b, and Everding (2000:169–173). It is noted there that he relied in the earlier part of his life on the Second Yol-mo-ba sPrul-sku Nam-mkha' brgya-byin and in his later years on the latter's reincarnation bsTan-'dzin nor-bu. The daughter of Khri bSod-nams dbang-phyug lde called lHa-gcig was given in a marriage alliance to the Third Yol-mo-ba sPrul-sku; for these close relations of bsTan-'dzin nor-bu with the royal family of Gung-thang, see Bogin (2006:11–12). Concerning biographical sketches of the Second and Third Yol-mo-ba sPrul-skus and their contacts with members of the mDo-chen tradition, compare Ehrhard (2007a:29–36), A short note on the life of Phyag-rdor nor-

He invited the Vidyādhara Yol-mo-ba [bsTan-'dzin nor-bu] to sKyid-grong, La-ldebs, [b]Tsum and so forth, setting up [there] many times *sGrub chen* [rituals] for the manufacturing of medicine and [pills for seven pure] rebirths, and [thus] opening the door for the activities of a great number of great beings. His mind and the one of Yol-mo[-ba] bsTan-'dzin nor-bu mingled into one, and in an official letter he was praised [by bsTan-'dzin nor-bu] with the following address: “Mantradhara, Bodhisattva, Mahāsattva, Complete Victorious One over the armies of hypocrisy, avarice and partiality!” And in the prayer of his life, written by [his son] Nor-bu bde-chen, it is said:

Champion of the very broad view, which is like the sky, lion of eloquence, possessing the three skills of mediation, by supreme conduct bringing under your power all [beings] endowed with deeds: to the Great Vidyādhara I offer my prayers!²⁵

[h]

His son, the Mantradhara Nor-bu bde-chen (b. 1617): In the *Yang gsang rdo rje phur pa'i bka'i tha ram*, which had been granted as a written notice together with sacred substances, yellow scrolls and so forth by the treasure-discoverer, the powerful Heruka bDud-'dul rdo-rje (1615–1672) from rTag-brtan Rin-chen steng in sPo-bo in [lower] Khams, it is stated:

An incarnation of Nam[-mkha'i] snying[-po], near [Ri-bo] dpal-'bar [he will appear]. Having the name “Blissful One”, he will be adorned with a mole in the middle of his chest—this one, having a [spiritual] share, when he has performed this

bu, the younger brother of bsTan-'dzin nor-bu, is contained in a work of Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku dealing with the history of the 'Brug-pa bKa'-brgyud-pa school; see Chos-kyi dbang-phyug: *dPal ldan gzhung 'brug bka' brgyud gser phreng gi bla ma brgyud pa'i rnam thar*, fols. 51a/1–52a/3.

²⁵ The invitation by Nam-mkha' seng-ge to [b]Tsum and La-[l]de[bs] is described by the Third Yol-mo-ba sPrul-sku in his autobiography; see bsTan-'dzin nor-bu: *Rang gi rtogs pa brjod pa rdo rje sgra ma'i rgyud mang*, pp. 257.5–258.5; compare the translation in Bogin (2005:240–241). The whole visit in the year 1631 must have lasted around two months as it is noted that Nam-mkha' seng-ge was able to finance two extensive *sGrub-chen* rituals, i.e. in [b]Tsum and La-[l]de[bs], during that period. The trip of bsTan-'dzin nor-bu started and ended at dKar-ye [dPal-gyi nags-khrod], the former retreat site of Ma-bdun ras-chen, located near Ri-bo dpal-'bar in sPang-zhing. Upon his return he transmitted there for three months the *Mahā gu ru sku gsum rigs bsdu*, a treasurer cycle of Byang-bdag bKra-shis stobs-rgyal; see *ibid.*, pp. 258.5–259.1, and Bogin (2005:241). The quotation from the official letter of the Third Yol-mo-ba and the prayer written by Nor-bu bde-chen have not yet been found in their original form.

teaching as a spiritual experience, [also] the doctrine of the “Teaching of [His] Family”, it will develop without decline, and in one life-time he will [attain] happiness in the dimension of Padma[sambhava]’s mind!²⁶

So it is known that he was someone prophesied [by Padmasambhava] as an incarnation of Nam[-mkha’i] snying[-po], and was having also a mother-spot in the centre of his body. At a tender age he came into the presence of the Vidyādhara Yol-mo-ba bsTan-’dzin nor-bu in dKar-ye [dPal-gyi nags-khrod]; a lock of hair was offered [to the teacher], and he received the name Nor-bu bde-chen. [bsTan-’dzin nor-bu] cared for him with great affection, and he listened on countless occasions to the nectar of empowerments, [reading-]authorizations and instructions. At one time [the teacher] said: “For you, I will exhibit a show today!” Having spread out on the surface of a wall the masquerade garment of Rāhu, in the same way as the body itself of the Great Yol-mo-ba performed the imposing [and] fearless postures of the ritual dance, the masquerade garment, too, showed the corresponding movements and appearances: such a magic show was seen by him.²⁷

²⁶ This prophecy concerning Nor-bu bde chen has to be seen in the context of his encounters with O-rgyan dpal-bzang (1617–1677), a native of southern Mustang in the Nepalese Himalayas, who had undertaken an arduous journey to Khams in eastern Tibet, where he became a “master of the teachings” (*bstan kyi bdag po*) of the treasure cycles of Rig-’dzin bDud-’dul rdo-rje. Before returning to his home region and founding the monastery of sKu-tshab gter-lnga near present-day Thini he stayed in Mang-yul Gung-thang and exchanged teaching transmissions with Nor-bu bde-chen; see Ehrhard (2001a:236–237). For further details on the teachings transmitted by O-rgyan dpal-bzang to Nor-bu bde-chen on different occasions, see Appendix II:A.1.a–g, A.5.a–n & F.10.a. The autobiography-cum-*gsan yig* of the master from Mustang contains two chapters devoted to prophecies concerning his own spiritual status as an incarnation of gNubs Sangs-rgyas ye-shes—like Nam-mkha’ snying-po counted as one of the twenty-five original disciples of Padmasambhava—and the way, how he was nominated by Rig-’dzin bDud-’dul rdo-rje as a holder of his teaching lineage and the variety of sacred substances which he received on that occasion; see O-rgyan dpal-bzang: *Rigs brgya dbang po ’dren mchog slob dpon dpal bzang po’i rnam par thar pa*, fols. 308a/1–309a/1 (*gu ru rin po che’i lung nas mngags mdor bsduṣ kyi skor*), and fols. 309a/2–311a/4 (*rig ’dzin chen po bdud ’dul gling pas [sic] mnga’ gsol rgyal tshab tu che ston mdzad tshul*). The first chapter quotes from the text *rDo rje phur pa’i bka’i tha ram* and the second chapter gives gSang-sngags rTag-brtan gling as the place, where the nomination occurred. The prophecy mentioning Nor-bu bde-chen is quoted by O-rgyan dpal-bzang at the end of the list of teachings which he received from Nor-bu bde-chen during their first encounter in the year 1661; see *ibid.*, fol. 271a/5–6 (*rdo rje phur pa’i bka’ gsang tha ram las / lung gis mngag pa nam snying sprul pa ni / nor bu’i ming can dpal nye ’byung*).

²⁷ dKar-ye [dPal-gyi nags-khrod], also known as dKar-ye dNgos-grub mtsho-gling in later times, was the favourite residence of the Third Yol-mo-ba sPrul-sku in the Mang-yul region and also the place, where his previous incarnations had stayed; see Ehrhard

As he had heard from his father, the Lord Nam-mkha' seng-ge, the complete doctrine of the mDo-chen-pa [tradition] and from the Siddha of [Ri-bo] dpal-'bar [called] dPag-bsam ye-shes (1598–1667) the profound guidances of the Mahāmudrā [doctrine], the own face of the primordial Reality-as-it-is became manifest. Further, he relied on many authoritative great beings of the new [and] old [schools], including rNgog-ston Karma blo-bzang [from] Brag-dkar [rta-so], [his successor] Ras-chen Karma chos-'phel, rGyal-thang Zil-gnon rdo-rje, the one from Ling-ba [Brag-dmar rdzong], Kun-bzang klong-yangs (1644–1699), the one from Mustang, sGam-smyon Phyag-rdor nor-bu and so forth. From the treasure-discoverer Gar-dbang rdo-rje (1640–1685) he heard the complete ripening [empowerments] and liberating [instructions] of the latter's own treasurers, and he became his Dharma son, the minds [of the master and the disciple] having melted into one, by establishing a [week long] sGrub chen [ritual] in Kun-dga' gling at mKhar-bang and so forth.²⁸

(2007a:44, note 51). The “Thob yig of the 17th Century” mentions the different transmissions that Nor-bu bde-chen had received from bsTan-'dzin nor-bu at that particular site in the year 1633 at the age of sixteen years; see Appendix II:A.3.a–h. It was also at dKar-ye [dPal-gyi nags-khrod] that the Third Yol-mo-ba sPrul-sku had completed his memoirs one year earlier, in 1632; see the text of bsTan-'dzin nor-bu (as in note 25), p. 267.6–7, and Bogin (2005:247).

²⁸ Three transmissions of teachings obtained by the father Nam-mkha' seng-ge are to be found in the “Thob yig of the 17th Century”, the first two occurring at lCogs-[ga] ri in the year 1647 and at Chos-rdzong in the year 1633; see Appendix II:A.4.a–u & F.8.a–e. A third one concerned the transmission of a Mahāmudrā lineage of the 'Brug-pa bKa'-brgyud-pa school; see Appendix II:F.2.a. The biography of the 'Brug-pa yogin dPag-bsam ye-shes, known for his prolonged residence at the sacred mountain Ri-bo dpal-'bar, contains information on meetings with Nam-mkha' seng-ge and the latter's son Nor-bu bde-chen; see Mi-pham dGe-legs rnam-par rgyal-ba: *rje bisun grub pa'i dbang phyug dam pa dpag bsam ye shes zhabs kyi ruam par thar pa*, fol. 46a/2–b/7. According to this source Nor-bu bde-chen had received the Mahāmudrā teachings according to the 'Brug-pa school after the death of his father; dPag-bsam ye-shes was travelling to La-[l]de[bs] afterwards, where he gave instructions on the “transference [of consciousness]” (*pho ba*) to many people, including Nam-mkha' seng-ge's brother Bla-ma 'Jigs-bral. The teachers rNgog-ston Karma blo-bzang and Ras-chen Karma chos-dpal are known as the fifth and the sixth abbot of the monastery at the Mi-la ras-pa site Brag-dkar rta-so; see Ehrhard (2004a:264). Concerning further activities of rNgog-ston Karma blo-bzang in spreading teachings of the Karma bKa'-brgyud-pa school in the Nepalese Himalayas, compare Ehrhard (2001b:103–106). rGyal-thang Zil-gnon rdo-rje was resident teacher at Ling-ba [Brag-dmar rdzong], another Mi-la ras-pa site in Mang-yul Gung-thang, and the teachings he transmitted to Nor-bu bde-chen are known from the “Thob yig of the 17th Century”; see Appendix II:D.2.a–j, F.1.a & F.4.a. Concerning the role of rGyal-thang Zil-gnon rdo-rje as a master of the teachings of Rig-'dzin Gar-dbang rdo-rje, see Ehrhard (1994:64–65). The biography of this treasure-discoverer, who was also known as mNga'-ris gter-ston and recovered his findings in the regions of sKyid-grong, [s]Ku-

Because of the wide expanse of his analysing power and his great knowledge also in the common sciences, including the [systems of the] “white calculation” [and] the “black calculation”, the *svarodaya* [astrology] and so forth, he composed [works] like the *Khro thung gi las byang nag po 'gro shes*. When this [work] *Khro thung gi las byang* had also been inspected in the presence of the great treasure[-discoverer], the Dharmarāja (i.e. Rig-'dzin gTer-bdag gling-pa [1646–1714]), the latter one exhaled [the statement]: “A well-done arrangement of the ritual acts!”²⁹

On the journey, where a lady from the western part of sKyid-grong was welcomed as his spouse, the bride was removed from her horse by a teacher of the 'Dzam-gling-pa family and taken away. When due to this [event] great disputes [and] hostilities occurred to and fro, this mighty Vidyāmantradhara performed the ritual acts [aimed at the subduing] of the horse [and] g.yag circle (?), separating the multitude of ritual acts of the protector (i.e. Mahākāla), and within seven days, due to an internal dispute between the other side [and] the party of the bride, [everyone] dispersed. And also afterwards, when he was staying in closed retreat in lCogs[-ga] ri for the ritual

thang and La-[l]de[bs], contains further information on the encounters with Nor-bu bde-chen, including the invitation to La-[l]de[bs] and the mentioned *sGrub chen* ritual; see rGyal-dbang seng-ge: *sPrul sku rig 'dzin chen po gar dbang rdo rje'i snying po'i rnam par thar pa*, pp. 56.1–57.3. The different teachings received by Nor-bu bde-chen from Rig-'dzin Gar-dbang rdo-rje are also contained in the “Thob yig of the 17th Century”; see Appendix II:D.4.a, D.5.a & F.9a–b. No records have survived concerning the transmissions of teachings from Phyag-rdor nor-bu, the younger brother of the Third Yolmo-ba sPrul-sku. The transmissions obtained from Kun-bzang klong-yangs are once again recorded in the “Thob yig of the 17th Century”; see Appendix II:A.2.a–s & F.7.a–c (reversed order!). This latter teacher was born in the Jumla region of the Nepalese Himalayas and is known as the main disciple of O-rgyan dpal-bzang and his successor as abbot of the monastery sKu-tshab gter-Inga. He was present when his teacher stayed in La-[l]de[bs] in the year 1666 and was invited later by Nor-bu bde-chen to give teachings there in person in the year 1689; see Kun-bzang klong-yangs: *rTogs brjod mu tig gi mchun bu (= chun po) zhes pa'i gtam*, fols. 16a/4–b/2, and 64a/1–65a/6.

²⁹ Up to now the work *Khro thung gi las byang* or any other of the writings of Nor-bu bde-chen have not become available to me. Contact between the religious authorities of the rNying-ma-pa school at sMin-grol gling and teachers from the borderlands of south-western Tibet were well established during the period of the 17th century. This can be seen, for example, in the case of Kun-bzang klong-yangs, who stayed at sMin-grol gling in Central Tibet for the greater part of the year 1688, immediately before his journey to La-[l]de[bs] upon the invitation by Nor-bu bde-chen; see his autobiography (as in note 28), fols. 57b/3–64a/1. The name of Glo-bo bla-ma Kun-bzang klong-yangs turns up several times for that very year in the biography of Rig-'dzin gTer-bdag gling-pa; see Ngag-dbang Chos-dpal rgya-mtsho: *gTer chen chos kyi rgyal po'i rnam thar*, pp. 314 ff. For a member of the mDo-bo-che family, who stayed at sMin-grol gling and was one of the teachers of Rig-'dzin gTer-bdag gling-pa, compare note 39.

acts aimed at the subduing of the *abhicāra* [rites], after about seven days the father, the Dharma lord Nam-mkha' seng-ge, arrived and said from the door to the cave: "What are you doing? You are not [eventually] performing something like the ritual acts of applying the evil?" And when from within the retreat [site] it was requested: "Please do not enter now the interior [of the cave]!", the father broke the door open and entered [the cave]. [The son] was sitting there after having arranged the maṇḍala of the violent *abhicāra* [rites], and had [it just] stirred up by the kicking of his feet. Having scolded him [with these words]: "If you perform from now on such ritual acts, you and me, we [two], have no pledge [between us]!", [but even] before that [event] the signs [of the successful practice] of the ritual acts aimed at subduing had [already] manifested completely, and not long afterwards the family lineage of the other side had been cut off.

On the occasion when [Nor-bu bde-chen] was residing in the upper teachers' quarters of 'Brog, although a violent meteoric iron of someone else's exorcizing [power] fell down from above, it did not cause any harm; the traces of it hitting a boulder in the vicinity are clearly manifest to the present day.

His hearing [of the Buddhist doctrine] was extremely wide and it also contained the cycle [*Kun bzang*] *thugs gter 'khor 'das rang grol* of [the treasure-discoverer] [Bya] mang-po Byang-chub gling-pa (14th cent.). When from the central region of Tibet the request was made in the form of the words of rDo-rje brag Rig-'dzin Padma 'phrin-las (1640–1718) and the great treasure[-discoverer] from sMin[-grol] gling, the Dharmarāja (i.e. Rig-'dzin gTer-bdag gling-pa), that he should come [there], he nevertheless replied that he was not able to go.³⁰

When he married a lady from [the family of] dPon-po Gong from [the village of] Grva, besides three daughters no son was born. As [afterwards] the auspicious circumstances were created [by him] that a son was begotten with a mudrā from [the family] with the name sPas-skya [from the village of] Nyi-lhod [in] [b]Tsum, the son bDud-'dul rdo-rje (1648–1672) was born. He is known as a reincarnation of the Mantradhara Nam-mkha' kun-

³⁰ For [Bya] mang-po Byang-chub gling-pa and his treasure cycle *Kun bzang thugs gter 'khor 'das rang grol* which was recovered near the lake lHa-mtsho srin-mtsho in Gung-thang, see Ehrhard (2004a:97 & 110–111, note 87). One of the transmissions of the findings of Byang-chub gling-pa reaching the Fifth Dalai Bla-ma (1617–1682) passed through Nub-dgon Chos-rgyal Byams-pa Chos rgyal-mtshan and the Third Yol-mo-ba sPrul-sku and his younger brother Phyag-rdor nor-bu; see the text of Ngag-dbang Blo-bzang rgya-mtsho (as in the Introduction, note 13), vol. 3, pp. 174.5–175.2. The transmission held by Nor-bu bde-chen was also the one of the Third Yol-mo-ba sPrul-sku, and he had received it from the latter's disciple sNgags-'chang 'Chi-med rgya-mtsho; see Appendix II:F.6.a.

bzang, the son of the emanation from Byams[-pa] sprin (i.e. Tshe-dbang bSod-nams rgyal-po); he passed away at the age of twenty-five years. To his spouse, to one dākinī endowed with the [special] marks, a lady of the Jo-bo family from [l]Cang in sKyid-grong whom he had married, were born three sons, [who were] brothers. bsTan-'dzin, the eldest, bsTan-pa'i nor-bu, the middle one, [and] rGyal-sras seng-ge (d. 1752), the youngest; [the latter one] was from an early age on, beginning with reading [and] writing, cared for by his grandfather (i.e. Nor-bu bde-chen) after having been made the representative of his father.³¹ The daughter of Nor-bu bde-chen, called bSod-nams rgyal-mo, became the spouse of rGyal-tshab seng-ge (d. 1672) of [the family] 'Dzam-gling-pa [from the village of] Grva [and] the son 'Dzam-gling-pa Blo-gros chos-'phel (1665–1728) was born. From an early age he studied in La-ldebs in the presence of his grandfather, and the way how he listened [to the teachings] [and] reflected [on them] is clear in his biography.³²

³¹ A short sketch of the life of Nam-mkha' kun-bzang, a second-generation descendant of Rig-'dzin bsTan-gnyis gling-pa, is contained in the genealogical record of that family written by Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku; see the text of Chos-kyi dbang-phyug (as in note 21), pp. 14.2–15.3, and Ehrhard (2007a:41, note 44). It is interesting to see how the spiritual connection between the two families, i.e. the descendants of Rig-'dzin bsTan-gnyis gling-pa and those of Che-mchog-pa, was further deepened by the process of recognizing reincarnations in the opposite family (the first case being Tshe-dbang bSod-nams rgyal-po, the father of Nam-mkha' kun-bzang). The “Thob yig of the 17th Century” notes the teachings received by Nor-bu bde-chen from Nam-mkha' kun-bzang; see Appendix II:D.3.a.

³² Initial information on the history of the 'Jam[-dpal] gling[-pa] family from the village of Grva, halfway between sKyid-grong and La-[l]de[bs], is given in Ehrhard (1997a:257, note 41) and Ehrhard (2000:65, note 65). The name of the first monastery under the administration of that family was 'Jam-dpal [bDe-chen] and had been given by Sa-skya Paṇḍita Kun-dga' rgyal-mtshan; up to the 16th century the family followed the teachings of the Sa-skya-pa school and it was only with the activities of 'Ba'-ra-ba Chos-rje Nam-mkha' rdo-rje that the teachings of the 'Ba'-ra-ba bKa'-brgyud-pa school became prominent; compare also Vitali (2007:287–292) for the early history of the 'Jam-gling-pa (spelled 'Dzam-gling-pa throughout the text under study). A biography of Blo-gros chos-'phel is available, which describes the early studies with the father and upon the latter's death with the grandfather Nor-bu bde-chen; see Ngag-dbang ye-shes: *dPal ldan bla ma dam pa rdo rje 'chang blo gros chos 'phel gyi rnam thar*, pp. 240.6–241.3 (*dgung lo bdun pa* [= 1671] *la yab rje dam pa nyid kyi drung du bcom ldan 'das padma dbang bzhi / rta po yongs rdzogs kyi lcags lung rnam rdzogs par gsan / gzhan yang kun rig rgyud don / phyag rdor 'byung 'dul / yab mes kyi chos skyong phyag bzhi pa rnam kyi dbang rjes gang sogs gsan / de'i phyi lo* [= 1672] *yang rje dam pa de nyid dag zhing du gshab pas / lan sde [sic] chos rdzong lcags ri sogs su mes po sngags 'chang dam pa nor bu bde chen gyi zhabs drung du klog yig sogs bslab sbyangs mdzad cing gsang sngags rnying lugs kyi dbang ches kyang zab cing rgya che ba mang du gsan*).

In the succession of teachers of the mDo-chen [bKa'-brgyud-pa] it appears that down to Gur-ston lHun-grub bkra-shis this one (i.e. Nor-bu bde-chen) was the most learned one. From his own prayer, a conversation called "Despising Song of Pride":

[He is] really the mighty Avalokiteśvara of virtuous deeds, born as the son of Nam-mkha' seng-ge [and] cared for [by him]. [He] who opens the doors to the profound treasures of ripening [empowerments and] liberating [instructions] of the new [and] old [schools]: to the one, whose continuing deeds had been cleansed in earlier [lives] I offer my prayers!

Having offered the lock of hair to the Jina Yol-mo-ba [bsTan-'dzin nor-bu], the second Padmasambhava, [his] name was also given by the teacher. He conferred the profound auspicious connection of vast insight [upon his disciple]: to the one, who is regarded as the main one among [bsTan-'dzin nor-bu's] spiritual sons, I offer my prayers!

After he had relied upon twenty learned [and] realized ones, the rain of blessing of [their] bodies [and] teachings of their speech poured down [upon him]. Cared for with the love of [their] minds he saw the own face of the Dharmakāya: to the one, who is skilled in unbiased visions I offer my prayers!

When he had performed the approaching [and] the accomplishing of the peaceful [and] wrathful deities, he attained to some extent the warmth of the [deities'] blessings. [Afterwards] he became one with the degree of confidence of intimidating the evil ghosts: to the one, who has reached the limit of tantric activities, I offer my prayers!

When he saw the assemblage of beings tormented by diseases [and] suffering, through the power of [his] compassion everyone [achieved] happiness for himself. He possesses the discipline of being able to dismiss [everything] not being elevated: to the one, who has entered the behaviour of the son of a Jina, I offer my prayers!

Because the lotus of his insight [and] understanding had been opened, the courage of having understood properly [all] the innumerable intentions of the sūtras [and] śāstras became manifest: to the one possessing the riches of having heard and reflected [the Buddhist doctrine], I offer my prayers!

Because the doors of the ripening [and] liberating teachings of the secret mantras had been opened, [there] manifested [themselves] the good omens that the blessings of the spiritual succession had moved on. He [is the one], who has planted the seed of liberation into all the fortunate ones: to you, where [every] connection established has meaning, I offer my prayers!

So it was said and in the way it was assured by his mouth established as true reality. The final deed [of Nor-bu bde-chen] was the passing into [the state of] peace in the highest storey of Kun-dga' gling at mKhar-bang [in La-ldebs]. It is known that also [the acts of] purifying his deceased body, the erection of the outer reliquary shrine and so forth, were performed by 'Dzam-gling-pa Blo-gros chos-'phel.³³

[i]

bsTan 'dzin, the [eldest] son of bDud-'dul [rdo-rje] stayed in the teachers' quarters of Nyi-lhod in [s]Ku-thang [b]Tsum and there were not born any sons to him. bsTan-pa'i nor-bu protected in turns [the other monasteries] in Lan-lde[bs] and [b]Tsum, [these] two; rGyal-sras [seng-ge] remained in the teachers' quarters at 'Brog. This [latter] one had heard completely the doctrines of the forefathers from his grandfather and from bsTan-pa'i nor-bu, and after arriving in dBus-gtsang he met in O-rgyan sMin-grol gling the All-Knowing [Lo-chen] Dharmasī (1654–1717), uncle [and] nephews, and heard completely the cycle of the New Treasures, and from the Great One from Nub-dgon, Kham[s]-lung-pa Padma dBang[-gi] rgyal[-po] (1657–1731), the [cycle] of the empowerment of the [*dGongs pa 'dus pa'i*] *mdo*.³⁴

³³ There are no details concerning the death or the erection of the reliquary shrine of Nor-bu bde-chen in the biography of Blo-gros chos-'phel. The only further reference to the grandfather is an invitation to La-[l]de[bs] after the first journey of Blo-gros chos-'phel to Central Tibet, where he had studied the teachings of the 'Ba'-ra-ba bKa'-brgyud-pa school and had met Rig-'dzin gTer-bdag gling-pa at sMin-grol gling; see the work of Ngag-dbang ye-shes (as in note 32), pp. 257.6–258.2 (*mes po sngags 'chang nor bu bde chen rang gnas su spyang drangs te snga 'gyur bka' ma sgyu 'phrul zhi khro / dong sprug dang bcas pa'i dbang lung yongs su rdzogs pa dang / gzhan yang pad gling drag po dmar chen / nyang gi phyag bzhi sogs mang du gsan / de rjes sngags 'chang dam pa nyid la smin gling gter gar skor phal che ba'i dbang lung 'bul bar mdzad*). The next event mentioned in the biography is the visit of Kun-bzang klong-yangs to La-[l]de[bs] in the year 1689, on which occasion Blo-gros chos-'phel also exchanged teachings with him; see *ibid.*, p. 258.2–5, and note 29.

³⁴ The transmissions which rGyal-sras seng-ge had received from his brother bsTan-pa'i nor-bu, from Lo-chen Dharmasī, from the latter's nephews, Padma 'Gyur-med rgyamtsho (1686–1718) and Zhabs-drung Yid-bzhin legs-grub (1698–1718), and from Kham[s]-lung-pa Padma dBang-gi rgyal-po (1657–1731) are all to be found in the

Having been accepted also as a mentor by the Vidyādhara, the Great One from Kaḥ-thog, Tshe-dbang nor-bu (1698–1755), [the latter one] heard [from him] the complete *sGyu 'phrul [zhi kbro]* cycle and also the stream of guidances of the Six White Ones, including the Mahāmudrā [doctrine] transmitted from Ma-bdun-pa onwards. In an official letter [of Tshe-dbang nor-bu] the prophecy is made: “The path of his life is great, with forty-six, [forty-]nine or fifty [years]. Liberated from that [life] he remains alive for [another] while. Having moved on [to the next live] he [then stays] in other places [of rebirth] for the time being, after obtaining [finally again] the human body of leisure [and] freedom, he is taken to the Vajrayāna [doctrine] after being seized by the blessing of Nam-mkha'i snying-po.”³⁵

[j]

To this great Mantradhara were born the sons Padma rgya-mtsho, Rig-'dzin 'Gyur-med rnam-rgyal (1714–1782), dPal-mgon [and] Chos-dbang, [these] four. The eldest one, Padma rgya-mtsho, remained in [b]Tsum and the sons sNgags-'chang O-rgyan and Blo-bzang nyi-ma, the reincarnation of Blo-

“Thob yig of the 17th Century”; see Appendix II:B.1.a–f, B.2.a–d, B.3.a–g, B.4.a–e, B.5.a–d & G.2. The latter master was affiliated with the monastery of Nub-dgon and propagated mainly teachings of the Byang-gter tradition as received by his teacher, the second rDo-rje brag Rig-'dzin Padma 'phrin-las (1640–1718). A biography of Kham[s]-lung-pa is available, which describes the transmission of the *mDo-dbang* cycle; see Ngag-dbang ye-shes: *dPal ldan bla ma kham lung pa chen po padma rig 'dzin dbang rgyal gyi rnam thar*, fols. 34b/3–35a/1. This happened in the village of Grva and next to bsTan-pa'i nor-bu and rGyal-sras seng-ge their half-brother, 'Dzam gling-pa Blo-gros chos-'phel, was also present on that occasion. On the basis of the latter's biography we can date this event to the year 1708; see the text of Ngag-dbang ye-shes (as in note 32), p. 267.2–4.

³⁵ The biography of Kaḥ-thog Rig-'dzin provides further information concerning the teachings of the mDo-chen tradition given by rGyal-sras seng-ge at Za-'og phug in Ra-la, a Mi-la ras-pa site in Gung-thang; this took place in the year 1748. See Chos-kyi dbang-phyug: *dPal ldan 'dzin chen po rdo rje tshe dbang nor bu'i zhabs kyi rnam par thar pa*, pp. 216.1–217.2. In his detailed account of the different Mahāmudrā lineages Kaḥ-thog Rig-'dzin also mentions the particular one going back to Ma-bdun ras-chen, who had originally obtained it from both his teachers Lo-ras-pa dBang-phyug brtson-'grus and rGod-tshang-pa mGon-po rdo-rje; for this doctrine, known as the Six White Ones, and for how it was passed on by the Ma-bdun tradition, see Tshe-dbang nor-bu: *Lha rje mnyam med zla 'od gzhon nu'i bka' bryud phyag chen gdams pa ji tsam nod pa'i rtogs brjod legs bshad rin chen 'byung khungs*, p. 241.1–6. The quoted prophecy concerning rGyal-sras seng-ge is contained in the collection of official letters issued by Kaḥ-thog Rig-'dzin; see his *Chab shog skor*, p. 746.5–6. For the complete missive, see *ibid.*, pp. 746.3–747.1. In the “Thob yig of the 17th Century” are also noted two transmissions of teachings that rGyal-sras seng-ge had received from Kaḥ-thog Rig-'dzin; see Appendix II:E.1.a & E.2.d.

bzang chos-grags, the great upādhyāya [from] Chos-mkhar [phug], were born [to him]. The Mantradhara [Rig-'dzin] 'Gyur-med rnam-rgyal heard completely the doctrine of the forefathers, [the family's] own system, from the father (i.e. rGyal-sras seng-ge) and the victorious son (i.e. Padma rgya-mtsho). The name of offering a lock of hair to the great Vidyādhara (i.e. Tshe-dbang nor-bu) was given as Tshe-dbang bsTan-'dzin grub-pa'i rdo-rje [and] he listened in manifold ways to the nectar of the ripening [initiations and] liberating [instructions of the latter's teachings].³⁶

He heard completely the full reading[-authorization] of the precious Collected Tantras of the Early Translation Period at [the monastery] of dPal-mo chos-sdings from Ngag-dbang lHun-grub grags-pa, the observer of vows from lHo-brag, and from rJe 'Ba'-ra-ba Ngag-dbang ye-shes (1700–1760) the great empowerment of the [*dGongs pa*] '*dus pa*'i] *mdo*; furthermore he relied on many noble kalyānamitras. From Ngor Kun-dga' lHun-grub (d. 1773) he heard the ripening [initiations and] liberating [instructions] of the *Zab tig* [*chos dbyings rang gsal*] of [Rig-'dzin] Gar-dbang rdo-rje and offered in return the initiation [and] reading[-authorization] of the *dPal mgon ma ning* [cycle] of [Rig-'dzin] 'Ja'-tshon snying-po (1585–1656) and so forth.³⁷

³⁶ The list of teachings which Padma rgya-mtsho had received from his father rGyal-sras seng-ge and other masters is available in the “Thob yig of the 17th Century”; see Appendix II:C.1a–e, C.2.a, C.3.a–c & C.4.a–i. One of his sons was regarded as an incarnation of Blo-bzang chos-grags, a master associated with Chos-mkhar phug, located in Shal-smad to the south of rDzong-dkar. This site is known as the residence of 'Jam-dbyangs bKra-shis rgya-mtsho (1641–1718), a disciple of the Fifth Dalai Bla-ma Ngag-dbang Blo-bzang rgya-mtsho; concerning bKra-shis rgya-mtsho, a native of Mang-yul Gung-thang, and his activities in his home region, see Ehrhard (2004a:265, 377, note 110 & 433, note 217). Blo-bzang chos-grags was a nephew and disciple of 'Jam-dbyangs bKra-shis rgya-mtsho and left a biography of his uncle; see *rJe btsun bla ma 'jam dbyangs bkra shis rgya mtsho'i rnam par thar pa*, fols. 23b/5–24b/3. 'Gyur-med rnam-rgyal was in the company of his father rGyal-sras seng-ge when they first met Kaḥ-thog Rig-'dzin in La-[l]de[bs] in the year 1727; see the text of Chos-kyi dbang-phyug (as in note 35), p. 124.6 (*mdo bo'i che'i snags 'chang rgyal sras seng ge yab sras sogs*). A final meeting occurred in the year 1752 during the ceremonies following the passing of rGyal-sras seng-ge; compare *ibid.*, p. 266.1–3.

³⁷ For the circumstances surrounding the reading[-authorization] of the *rNying ma rgyud 'bum* at dPal-mo chos-sdings in Gung-thang and the presence of 'Gyur-med rnam-rgyal on that occasion, see Ehrhard (1997b:256–257). 'Ba'-ra-ba Ngag-dbang ye-shes was a son of 'Dzam-gling-pa Blo-gros chos-'phel, who had received the vows as a Buddhist novice from 'Jam-dbyangs bKra-shis rgya-mtsho in Chos-mkhar phug and had later also studied with Blo-bzang chos-grags. Among his further teachers one finds Kaḥ-thog Rig-'dzin Tshe-dbang nor-bu and Kham[s]-lung-pa Padma dBang-gi rgyal-po. His extensive biography contains further details of a transmission of the *mDo-dbang* cycle and it is noted that Ngag-dbang ye-shes was active in this regard in order to fulfil the wishes of the latter teacher; see Chos-dbyings rdo-rje: *rJe btsun bla ma dam pa rdo rje 'chang kun*

To his son, bearing the name “Noble Nātha” (i.e. Tshe-dbang ’Chi-med mgon-po [1755–1807]) he offered the reading[-authorization] of the complete Old Tantras and earlier [and] later he obviously transmitted about four times the complete empowerments [and] reading authorizations of the *sGyu ’phrul [zhi khro]* [to him]. Also disciples manifested in manifold ways, including the noble mGon-gnang-pa (i.e. Rig-’dzin ’Phrin-las bdud-’joms [1726–1789]), [Blo-bzang nyi-ma], the reincarnation [from] Chos-mkhar [phug], [and] the brothers, [who were] the sons of the family of the Lord dPal-lding-pa (i.e. ’Gyur-med ’Phrin-las bstan-’dzin). Also myself, at the age of seven (i.e. in 1781) I received the empowerment and reading[-authorization] of some volumes of the Collected Tantras and the *dPal mgon legs ldan* [cycle]. He established the teachers’ quarters of Chos-rdzong and the teachers’ quarters of Chos-dkar gling [in] sMu-lug, together with the assembly hall. At sixty-nine years [of age] he passed away into the realm of final peace, accompanied by astonishing visions.

His younger brother, dPal-mgon, became learned as a medical expert and it is said that he had the sign of a vīra, one white birth-mark, just the size of a pea, at the sphere of his forehead. This one passed away in his forty-seventh year. The youngest one [of the sons of rGyal-sras seng-ge], Chos-dbang [by name], went at the beginning as a bridegroom to Byams[-pa] sprin; later, as [the situation there was] not adequate, he returned back to his own place and stayed together with his brothers. [He possessed] the eye of wisdom and went together with the noble dPal-lding-pa (i.e. ’Gyur-med ’Phrin-las bstan-’dzin) to dBus-gtsang on pilgrimage. It is known that after his passing away there appeared in close succession two very distinct reincarnations.³⁸

mkhyen o rgyan ngag dbang ye shes dpal bzang po’i rnam thar, pp. 551.2–3. Concerning Ngor Kun-dga’ lhun-grub it is known that he belonged to the Ngor-pa tradition of the Sa-skyapa school, had founded a monastery near the sacred lake Mānasārovar in the Kailāsa region and had later settled in the La-[l]de[bs] valley; see Ehrhard (2003:97–98). According to the biography of his disciple O-rgyan chos-’phel (b. 1755) Ngor Kun-dga’ lhun-grub was in particular holding the teaching lineage of the treasures of Rig-’dzin Gar-dbang rdo-rje through the master O-rgyan bstan-’dzin (1657–1737) from the Dol-po region; see O-rgyan chos-’phel: *O rgyan chos ’phel gyi nyi tshe skye ba ’di’i rtogs brjod phyi rnam thar*, fol. 152b/1–2 (*gter bton gar dbang rdo rje / gter slob g.yu bkra [= sgra] sprul pa o rgyan bstan ’dzin / yang slob padma ’gro don / snying slob bdag gi rtsa ba’i bla ma ngag dbang kun dga’ lhun grub*). A sketch of the spiritual career of O-rgyan bstan-’dzin and his activities in the Nepalese Himalayas is provided by Schaeffer (2004:23–26).

³⁸ The contribution of ’Chi-med mgon-po, the son of ’Gyur-med rnam-rgyal, in spreading the tradition of the *rNying ma rgyud ’bum* included also—together with ’Gyur-med ’Phrin-las bstan-’dzin—the production of a manuscript edition of the collected tantras, which was kept at the upper and lower teachers’ quarters in La-[l]de[bs]. The reading[-authorization] that Chos-kyi dbang-phyug received at mChod-rten nag-po near Brag-

[k]

To Rig-'dzin 'Gyur-med rnam-rgyal were born the sons Tshe-dbang Legs-grub bzang-po, Tshe-dbang bDe-chen bzang-po [and] Tshe-dbang 'Chi-med mgon-po, [these] three brothers.

[l]

To the sons of the above-mentioned Gur-ston Nam-mkha' lhun-grub, [namely] 'Jigs-bral and Thod-smyon, [these] two, was born the son dKon-mchog lhun-grub. And also he heard from the Mantradhara Nor-bu bde-chen many initiations and reading[-authorizations], including the cycle of the doctrine of the forefathers and so forth; it is said that in the end there was a minor dispute [between the two branches of the family]. Having gone to dBus-gtsang he heard at sMin-grol gling in the presence of the great treasure[-discoverer] (i.e. Rig-'dzin gTer-bdag gling-pa) a great amount of profound teachings, and it is clear from his biography that he also offered some reading[-authorizations] in return, including the *sGyu 'phrul rdo rje'i las rim* and so forth.³⁹

[m]

To dKon-mchog lhun-grub were born the sons Gar-dbang, Chos-dbang [and] 'Chi-med phun-tshogs, [these] three. The two elder ones protected the teachers' quarters [in bTsum], and the youngest one touched the feet of many learned [and] realized ones, including sTag-rtse [sKu-skye-]ba [Mipham Phun-tshogs shes-rab (1654–1715)]; he was deeply learned in white [and] black astrology. Having arrived in Central Tibet he offered the lock of

dkar rta-so in the year 1781 was the one passing through Rig-'dzin 'Phrin-las bdud-'joms, another disciple of 'Gyur-med rnam-rgyal. Concerning these details on the spread of the *rNying ma rgyud 'bum* in Mang-yul, see Ehrhard (1997b:258–259); compare Ehrhard (2007a:42–45) for data on Rig-'dzin 'Phrin-las bdud-'joms. The teachers' quarters Chos-rdzong and Chos-dkar gling, erected by Rig-'dzin 'Gyur-med rnam-rgyal in the La-[l]de[bs] valley, were later maintained by his son Tshe-dbang 'Chi-med mgon-po; see notes 47 & 48. No further information is available on the other two sons of rGyal-sras seng-ge; concerning 'Gyur-med 'Phrin-las bstan-'dzin, the master also known as dPal-lding-pa, compare also note 42.

³⁹ The biography of dKon-mchog lhun-grub has not surfaced until now. But details on the transmission of teachings by dKon-mchog lhun-grub in the year 1679 are contained in the biography of Rig-'dzin gTer-bdag gling-pa; see the work of Ngag-dbang Chos-dpal rgya-mtsho (as in note 29), p. 198.3–4 (*mdo bo che ba dkon mchog lhun grub la sgyu 'phrul phra mo skor gyi lung 'ga' re bcas gsan*). His name can also be found among a list of teachers of Rig-'dzin gTer-bdag gling-pa. They are known as “the twenty-five kalyānamitras, who had obtained different kinds of profound teachings and were widely skilled in visionary teachings;” see *ibid.*, pp. 327.5–328.3 (*zab chos sna tshogs thob cing dag snang rgya cher sbyangs pa'i bshes gnyen nyi shu rtsa lnga*).

hair in sMin[-grol] gling in the presence of Rig-'dzin gTer-bdag gling-pa [and] was given the name 'Gyur-med gSang-sngags bstan-'dzin. He was cared for by the great treasure-discoverer, father [and] sons, and uncle [and] nephews, including the younger brother [Dharmaśrī], the great upādhyāya [and] translator; and he listened to many ripening [initiations] [and] liberating instructions, principally of the cycles of the new treasurers [of Rig-'dzin gTer-bdag gling-pa]. He was given personal sermons, fully seized by [the latter's] compassion, and [also] many blessed sacred items.⁴⁰

After returning to his home region, in the latter part of his life he stayed for his practice exclusively at the hermitage of dPal-lding. He ripened the essential points of the spiritual practice of the two stages and the fully complete three activities of approaching [and] realizing many personal deities, including *gShin rje dregs joms* [and] *bDe gshegs kun 'dus* of [the cycles of] the teacher [Padmasambhava], the [Great] Perfection [and] the [Great] Compassionate One, [these] three, of the New Treasures. A few [times] he produced also prints of some chapters of the *bDe gshegs kun 'dus* and the *gSol 'debs le'u bdun ma*. Also his protecting the benefit of others, [i.e.] the disciples, manifested [itself] in manifold ways, including the hearing of the ripening [empowerments and] liberating [instructions] of the complete cycle of the New Treasures by Grub-mchog Ye-shes chos-grags (1705–1772) from Brag-dkar [rta-so] and my own teacher, the great Vidyādhara mGon-gnang-pa (i.e. Rig-'dzin 'Phrin-las bdud-'joms).

His disciple in the science of astrology [was] sTobs-ldan [from] A-ya [in] Grva. It is obvious that from the latter's [disciple] known as mGon-po, the learned one from [the village of] sPang-zhing, the tradition of the science of astrology [known as] the Phug[-pa] system gradually spread in this region [of Mang-yul Gung-thang].⁴¹

⁴⁰ sTag-rtse sKu-skye Mi-pham Phun-tshogs shes-rab had been active in the Mustang region of the Nepalese Himalayas and was a disciple of the 'Brug-pa bKa'-brgyud-pa masters sNyan-grags dpal-bzang (1617–1680) and the famous yogin Rang-rig ras-pa (d. 1683); see Ehrhard (2002:148–149, note 3) and Ehrhard (2003:100). According to the “Thob yig of the 17th Century” mDo-chen-pa rGyal-sras seng-ge had also received a Mahāmudrā transmission from sTag-rtse sKu-skye Mi-pham Phun-tshogs shes-rab; see Appendix II:G.1. 'Gyur-med gSang-sngags bstan-'dzin is listed as a link between Rig-'dzin 'Phrin-las bdud-'joms and Rig-'dzin gTer-bdag gling-pa in the transmission of the latter's treasure cycle *rDor sems thugs sgrub* in the Sherpa region of eastern Nepal; see Ehrhard (1993:93).

⁴¹ The master Grub-mchog Ye-shes chos-grags, a native of southern Mustang and resident teacher at Brag-dkar rta-so, was the previous incarnation of Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku Chos-kyi dbang-phyug; see Ehrhard (2004a:90, note 55). A short note on 'Gyur-med gSang-sngags bstan-'dzin, also known as O-rgyan gSang-sngags bstan-'dzin, as a teacher of Rig-'dzin 'Phrin-las bdud-'joms is contained in the latter's biography; see

[n]

The sons of Gar-dbang [and] Chos-dbang, [these] two, were born [as] dPal bzang-po, 'Byung-gnas [and] the youngest one, Nor-bu don-grub, [these] three. The eldest one had [the ability of] the wide eye of analysing the two glorious systems (i.e. the worldly and the religious doctrine) and the youngest one protected the teachers' quarters [at bTsum]. The middle one offered the lock of hair to Kham[s]-lung-pa gSang-sngags bstan-'dzin [and] was given the name 'Gyur-med 'Phrin-las bstan-'dzin. [From him] he heard scattered [teachings], including the *Thugs sgrub rnam gsum* [cycle] of the Northern Treasures, from Ngor Kun-dga' lhun-grub [the cycles] *Zab tig [chos dbyings rang gsal]* and *dKon mchog spyi 'dus* and so forth, from rNam-grol rdo-rje, the one from 'Bras[-mo] ljons, (i.e. Sikkim), the New Treasures [of Rig-'dzin gTer-bdag gling-pa], [and] from Rig-'dzin 'Gyur-med rnam-rgyal the complete stream of the doctrine of the forefathers, including the *sGyu 'phrul* cycle and so forth.

Although there had occurred before the dispute between the Mantradhara Nor-bu bde-chen [and] dKon-mchog lhun-grub, [these] two, master [and] disciple, this one (i.e. 'Gyur-med 'Phrin-las bstan-'dzin) purified the dispute by convening confession, and from then on there was no dispute [between the two branches of the family and the situation] cleared up. As [the monastery] called dPal-ldan sding, founded earlier by the incomparable Chos-rje ston-pa, had become in the course of time something like being [completely] empty, he renovated [it] and newly established the tradition of a convent for spiritual practice. He erected the teachers' quarters [there], an assembly hall together with sacred items, a [large] prayer-wheel [containing the ṣaḍakṣarī [formula], statues for the temple of the convent, the main one being an icon of the Mahācārya [Padmasambhava] and so forth.

Also the achievement [was] excellent in terms of increasing the custom of ritual services, including the very extensive [week-long] *sGrub mchod* [ritual] of the *Na rag dong skrugs* maṇḍala and the newly established ritual service of the *Zab tig [chos dbyings rang gsal]* on a yearly basis; and he offered the initiations [and] reading[-authorizations] of the '*Chi med yang snying kun 'dus* [cycle] of the New Treasures [of Rig-'dzin gTer-bdag gling-pa] to [Kun-dga' lhun-grub], the lord of the doctrine from Ngor. There appeared many disciples, including the successors of the family [of Rig-'dzin bsTan-gnyis gling-

Tshe-dbang 'Chi-med mgon-po: *Rig 'dzin chen po karma bdud 'joms kyi rnam par thar pa*, pp. 40.6–41.1, and Ehrhard (2007a:44). A collection of astrological texts of the Phug-pa system as spread in Mang-yul Gung-thang is available; see different authors: "Lesser Known Tibetan Astrological Texts of the Phug-pa Tradition." For the temple of the Himalayan territorial priests known as A-ya in Grva and the statement that they followed the teaching tradition of sMin-grol gling, compare Ramble (2007:708–709).

pa], like the noble teacher mGon-gnang-pa (i.e. Rig-'dzin 'Phrin-las bdud-'joms), and those like Kun-spang Nam-mkha' bsam-gtan and so forth. When the span of his life and the practice were at an equal stage, he passed away to a pure field in his seventy-third year.⁴²

[o]

As the sons of the Mantradhara dPal bzang-po and Nor-bu don-grub, [these] two, were born Nam-mkha' lhun-grub, bDud-'dul dbang-phyug [and] bsKal-bzang rnam-rgyal, [these] three brothers.

[p]

The youngest son of the above-mentioned Rig-'dzin 'Gyur-med rnam-rgyal, the noble teacher resting as the essence of the all-encompassing Vajrasattva, bearing the name Nātha, was born in the wood female pig year in the thirteenth sexagenarian cycle [called] *yuvan* (i.e. 1755). At [the site of] dNgos-grub phug he offered the lock of hair in the presence of the Mahāvīdyādhara [Kaḥ-thog] Tshe-dbang nor-bu [and] was given the name Tshe-dbang 'Chi-med mgon-po; he [also] heard the explanation of the profound way, the Guru Yoga, [from the master on that occasion]. At six years [of age] he knew without difficulty how to read [and] write. At [the age of] nine he had mastered writing [completely] and heard from his father, the noble great Mantradhara (i.e. Rig-'dzin 'Gyur-med rnam-rgyal) [like] a vessel is filled to the brim, all the ripening [initiations and] liberating [instructions] on earlier [and] later [occasions], including the *sGyu 'phrul* cycle, the doctrine of the forefathers, and the initiations [and] reading[-authorizations] of the *Na rag dong dkrugs* [cycle] and so forth.

Furthermore, from 'Gyur-med 'Phrin-las bstan-'dzin, the noble one from dPal-sding, from the Vidyādhara, the great one from mGon-gnang, 'Phrin-las bdud-'joms, from the observer of vows, bsTan-'dzin rdo-rje (1731–

⁴² Kham[s]-lung-pa gSang-sngags bstan-'dzin was a disciple of Kham[s]-lung-pa Padma dBang-gi rgyal-po of Nub-dgon, on whom see note 34. Concerning Ngor Kun-dga' lhun-grub, a disciple of Rig-'dzin Gar-dbang rdo-rje, compare note 37. I have no information on rNam-grol rdo-rje from Sikkim, a lineage holder of the treasure cycles of Rig-'dzin gTer-bdag gling-pa. Kun-spangs Nam-mkha' bsam-gtan was a follower of the doctrine of the Great Perfection and a disciple of sMan-bspom Chos-rje Kun-dga' dpal-ldan (1735–1804) in the medical profession; see Ehrhard (2007b:123). A reference to the renovation of dPal-ldan sding(s) in the La-[l]de[bs] valley by 'Gyur-med 'Phrin-las bstan-'dzin can be found in the autobiography of Tshe-dbang 'Chi-med mgon-po; he was present there with his father Rig-'dzin 'Gyur-med rnam-rgyal in 1764 when the paintings of the assembly hall were newly executed; see Tshe-dbang 'Chi-med mgon-po: *Gur gyi sngags ban tshe dbang 'chi med mgon po'i rang tshul chu 'babs su brjod pa*, p. 22.2–3 (*rang lo bcu pa'i skabs su dpal ldang gi / 'du khang chen po'i ldebs ris gsar skrun skabs / yab rje mchog gi zhabs phyir bskang gso sogs / gtong zhing dpyid kyi ring der gnas byas shing*).

1776), and so forth, the vessel of his mind was filled with the nectar of an ocean of profound [and] wide teachings of the new [and] old [schools], the main one being those of his [family's] own system. He was also learned in the common sciences, [i.e.] medicine, white [and] black astrology, arts [and] sculpture, and also the composition of poetical writings manifested in his mind as something bursting forth by itself, without [any] effort.⁴³

From [the age of] sixteen [years] onwards he performed properly the approaching [and] accomplishing [of the deities of] the *sGyu 'phrul zhi khro* [cycle], and on the occasion when he heard from his father, the noble one (i.e. Rig-'dzin 'Gyur-med rnam-rgyal), the profound guidances of [the treasure cycle] *Thugs rje chen po ye shes 'od mchog* [of Dri-med kun-dga' (b. 1347)], he saw the own face of great originary awareness, the correct state of Being-as-it-is.⁴⁴

From [the age of] twenty-one [years] onwards up to forty-four [years], [he conducted] at [places like] Chos-rdzong, Bum-phug, Gru-'dzin dkar, lCogs[-ga] ri [and] bKra-shis sding four times the attainment of a three-year [retreat] and further on the approaching [and] accomplishing of many personal deities, relying on [the period of practice] from one month onwards up to one week. After having condensed the spiritual practice of "firm abiding" (*khregs chod*) of the Great Perfection in accordance with the time [periods and] the central points he then lived as a spiritual experience the application of the inner wind and so forth of the "leaping over" (*thod rgal*) and obtained thus firmness in the generating phase, where the impure visions are blocked. As he [then] achieved control of originary awareness of the completion stage,

⁴³ The person known as bsTan-'dzin rdo-rje was the younger brother of Rig-'dzin 'Phrin-las bdud-'joms; see the work of Chos-kyi dbang-phyug on the descendants of the family of Rig-'dzin bsTan-gnyis gling-pa (as in note 21), fols. 14b/4–15b/1. For the early education of Tshe-dbang 'Chi-med mgon-po under the aforementioned teachers, see his autobiography (as in note 42), pp. 17.5–26.5. The studies of the different systems of astrology mainly took place in the year 1767 under his father Rig-'dzin 'Gyur-med rnam-rgyal; see *ibid.*, p. 24.2–3 (*bcu gsum lon skabs dgun ring 'brog nyid du / skes rtsis bag rtsis gshin rtsis la sogs dang pa / nag rtsis skor dang ri khrod chos rdzong du / skar rtsis dgu mtha' nas bzung sgru ba dang / le'u tho bsdu pa 'dun pa'i tshul la sogs / yab rje nyid nas gang mkhyen kun slab pa shing / tshogs med nyid du shes pas ...*).

⁴⁴ The transmission of the treasure cycle *Thugs rje chen po ye shes 'od mchog* and the mentioned spiritual experience occurred also at Chos-rdzong, one of the two hermitages established by the father; see the work of Tshe-dbang 'Chi-med mgon-po (as in note 42), pp. 30.6–31.2 (*de yi dgun thog ril por chos rdzong du / thugs rje chen po ye shes 'od mchog gi / dbang lung dang ni khyad par smin khrid skor / legs par zhus shing sems ngo sprod pa'i skabs / gnas 'gyur rig sogs zhib par rtsad gcod pa'i / bka' dri phebs tshe 'dri ba gsum khongs su / gnas lugs don nyid 'gol 'dugs med pa yi / rang ngo brjen par [= rjen par] gsal ba'i lan phul tshe / rje nyid shin tu dgye pa'i dbugs byung bcas*). This treasure cycle had been transmitted in the family since the 16th century; see note 17.

there appeared the impartial intention of the [state of] self-manifested Great Perfection, the defining characteristics of [the object] which is grasped [and] the grasping [subject] became liberated in their own place; he [thus] achieved the enlightenment in the great expanse of equanimity, where the whole of saṃsāra is without a base [and] free from any origin, the freedom of an encompassing samādhi of the Clear Light, where meditative absorption [and] the succeeding [post meditative state] are without any difference. He was able to enjoy without any hindrance all the means [of the attainment] of the siddhis, including sacred substances and so forth. He mastered the behaviour of the strict discipline of the outward activity of knowledge, where no thought is wasted on negative conditions. In regard to his seeing the lamps [and] visions [of the leaping over], the facts of the teachers and personal deities were shown [to him] and he was blessed [by them]. As he looked at [and] understood the sūtras, tantras, upadeśas [and] the pronouncements of the noble learned [and] realized ones, he obtained without any hindrance the power of making full use of [his] mind, and as he thoroughly understood all the phenomena whatsoever, he became someone without any rival in exposing [the Buddhist doctrine] and composing [treatises].⁴⁵

At [the age of] twenty-eight [years] he undertook a journey to encounter the sacred places [and] receptacles of Nepal, and at [the age of] thirty [years] he went to encounter all the sacred places [and] receptacles of the region of dBus-gtsang, [the central Buddhist region] under the sun, and of Tsa-ri-tra, the enclosure of wisdom, and so forth; on [all] these occasions he experienced in manifold ways hardship during the travels, including fever and so forth. Having met many noble authoritative persons, like the protector of

⁴⁵ For the period of 1775 to 1798 in the life of Tshe-dbang 'Chi-med mgon-po, see his autobiography (as in note 42), pp. 36.3–121.3. Concerning the sites where he conducted his spiritual practices, it should be mentioned that he renovated lCogs[-ga] ri, the first establishment of the mDo-bo-che tradition in La-[l]de[bs] and known as the birthplace of Che-mchog-pa; see *ibid.*, p. 85.3–6 (*de nas re shig der 'dug dbyar thog nyid lcogs rir sdod cing jo pho gling nyid kyi* [gloss: *sngags 'chang che mchog rdo rje*] *'khrungs pa ru / grags pa'i dgon ro de nyid zhib gso kyi / grabs yul byas shing chos rdzong dgon pa yi / jo bisun rnams nas shing cha gcod 'dren dang / apal ldng grub pa ngag dbang 'phrin las kyi / rdo bzo dang dang ni mched po rgyal mtshan gyis / shing bzo gyis pa zhag bcu'i khongs su grub / de nas khong rnams phyir ldog rang nyid dang bu chung padma nam mha' stobs rgyal bcas / mtshams pa mtshams g.yog tshul du byas nas ni*). This happened in the year 1785; two years later at the age of thirty-two, a further retreat is mentioned, especially devoted to *khregs chod* and *thod rgal*. Another retreat during which he was engaged in these spiritual practices took place in 1790; see the autobiography (as in note 42), pp. 90.3–91.3 & 101.6–102.6. A text dealing with *khregs chod* was composed by Tshe-dbang 'Chi-med mgon-po in the year 1796 at the hermitage of Chos-rdzong; see *id.*: *Khregs chod lta ba'i gnas lugs snying po don gyi man ngag gi bshad 'grel man ngag rin po che'i snye ma*.

[Tibet, the land of] glaciers, the one holding a white lotus, [the Eighth Dalai Bla-ma] 'Jam-dpal rgya-mtsho (1758–1804), father [and] sons, the mighty one among the Jinas, the Thirteenth Karma-pa [bDud-'dul rdo-rje] (1733–1797), the venerable [Eighth] 'Brug-pa Rin-po-che [Chos-kyi snang-ba] (1768–1822), the great upādhyaya from sMin[-grol] gling, O-rgyan bstan-'dzin rdo-rje (b. 1742), and so forth, he returned back to his home region.⁴⁶ He [then] granted a circle of [religious] deeds, [i.e.] an assembly hall for Chos-rdzong, together with sacred items, an assembly hall for Chos-dkar gling [in] sMu-lug[s], [together with] a [great] Dharma wheel [filled with] the ṣaḍakṣari [formula], a complete [manuscript edition of the] precious Collected Tantras of the Early Translation Period of the Secret Mantras, stūpas [and] golden reliquary shrines and so forth, and to all the teachers of the mDo-chen [tradition], his own family, the complete reading[-authorization] of the precious Collected Tantras of the Early Translation Period and in the way that it was filled to the brim of a vessel all the ripening [initiations and] liberating [instructions], headed by the doctrine of the forefathers, like the *sGyu 'phrul* [cycle] and so forth. Also myself, I received many times the kindness of [his] profound teachings, including on earlier [and] later occasions the initiations [and] reading[-authorizations] of the *sGyu 'phrul* [cycle] and instructions of the [Mahā]mudrā [and the Great] Perfection. In order that the Buddhist doctrine may remain a long time he composed in manifold ways also well-formulated treatises like ritual manuals for the initiation of the *Zhi khro* [cycle] [and] the [*Tshe khrid*] *rdo rje phreng ba* [of Rig-'dzin Padma gling-pa (1450–1521)], a record of teachings received, explanatory commentaries on the [Mahā]mudrā [and the Great] Perfection [doctrines], [and] treatises for approaching [the deity] and so forth.⁴⁷

⁴⁶ The pilgrimages to Nepal in the year 1782 and to Tsā-ri and Central Tibet two years later are described in the autobiography; see Tshe-dbang 'Chi-med mgon-po (as in note 42), pp. 59.2–60.2 & 64.6–82.5. During the journey to Nepal Tshe-dbang 'Chi-med mgon-po also paid a visit to the sacred sites of Yol-mo Gangs[-kyi] rva[-ba]. Returning to his home region after the pilgrimage to Central Tibet he encountered the Tenth Zhva-dmar-pa Chos-grub rgya-mtsho (1742–1792) at the sacred site of dNgos-grub phug in the sKyid-grong region; see *ibid.*, p. 82.2–3 (*de ring min smin drug zla nang du / zhva dmar rje yang dngos grub phug nyid du / phebs zhes thos pas yul skya ser tshogs / du mar bcas te mjal phyin mjal kha yang / spro bar gyur*). This must have happened when the Tenth Zhva-dmar-pa was on his own pilgrimage to Nepal in the year 1784; for this date and the events following that journey, see Ehrhard (2007b:119–121).

⁴⁷ Among the different building projects of Tshe-dbang 'Chi-med mgon-po, the erecting of an assembly hall at Chos-rdzong took place in the years 1790 to 1791, during the period of the Sino-Nepalese war; see the autobiography (as in note 42), pp. 103.1–105.6. Concerning his efforts in producing a manuscript edition of the *rNying ma rgyud 'bum* in La-[l]de[bs], see note 38. This took place in the year 1794, i.e. after the end of the Sino-Nepalese war, see Ehrhard (1997b:258). According to the memoirs of Tshe-

Having been completely liberated from the attachment of mental acts for his own benefit, with the courage of caring solely for the benefit of the Buddhist doctrine [and] the beings, he passed his time with the complete white deeds of [performing] the explanation [of the teachings], the attainment [of the spiritual practice and] the [tantric] activities; and thus his kindness for the prolonged life-force of [the Buddhist doctrine] in general and the doctrine of the Gur-rigs mDo-chen [tradition] in particular, was immeasurable: because from Nor-bu bde-chen, the Mantradhara of the earlier times, onwards, the skill of knowledge [and] understanding of this noble one alone and the excellent accomplishments of his deeds were established by direct perception.

Such a course of life, in a way like pointing [only] to the teachings, on the break of dawn of the thirtieth day of the waning moon of the great fourth Tibetan month [of the year 1808], in his fifty-fourth year, he contracted the maṇḍala of his visible body into the Dharmadhātu, the expanse of the Clear Light, the Vessel of the Youthful Vase. Those wishing to understand in detail [his] biography should look into what has become separately clear as the verses of the words of the lord himself, [the work] called “Pleasantly Flowing Sound of Water.”⁴⁸

dbang 'Chi-med mgon-po the preparations for this project had started already in the preceding year and included the purchase of the necessary paper from Nepal. The scribes for the writing out of the actual manuscripts were recruited from La-[l]de[bs] and the village of gNas, to the east of sKyid-grong; see *ibid.*, pp. 110.5–111.1 (*bal yul phyogs su dpal lding chos rdzong gi / grva pa rnam gnyis shog bu bsgrub tu btang / dpyid sos shog bu sleb phral la ldebs dang / gnas shar nub kyi rig mkhan kha shas la / bla med dkon mchog spyi 'dus dbang bzhi tsam / bskur nas tshugs pa'i ston mo mtshon byed dang / bcas te so sor ma dpe shog bu sogs sprad nas lo 'khor khongs su grub bkod byas*). For the festivities upon the completion of the project, see *ibid.*, pp. 112.3–113.5. A few of the works of Tshe-dbang 'Chi-med mgon-po are available, but not his *gsan yig* and the mentioned writings; for his work on the spiritual practice of *khregs chod*, see note 45. A work devoted to the *sGrub mchod* rituals of the Seven Vajra Mothers has also survived. It was written at Chos-dkar gling in the years 1802 to 1803; see Tshe-dbang 'Chi-med mgon-po: *rDo rje ma bdun ma'i bka' gtad ji ltar bya ba'i tshul*.

⁴⁸ The first part of the work *Lhung lung snyan pa'i chu sgra* is the autobiographical account of Tshe-dbang 'Chi-med mgon-po. It was completed at Chos-dkar gling—spelt Chos-mkhar gling in the text—in the year 1803. The work was afterwards expanded by Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku covering the final part of the life of his teacher; see the autobiography (as in note 42), pp. 12.1–145.5 & 146.1–163.4). From this appendix it becomes clear that the renovation of the assembly hall at Chos-dkar gling took place in the year 1805; see *ibid.*, p. 150.1–2. This was followed by a final reading[-authorization] of the *rNying ma rgyud 'bum* upon the request, among others, of a teacher from Zhe-chen monastery in Kham. It is noted that the edition used for the transmission comprised 37 volumes in all; see *ibid.*, p. 150.2–5,

[IV]

So, other [persons] than those mentioned in the coarse [and] detailed biographies up to this lord are easy to understand [from further sources]. It is known [for example] in the old writing of a history that one person known as Gur-ston dPal-mdzes [rgyal-mtshan] (12th/13th cent.) [[*gloss*: it appears in an ancient chronicle]] and also 'Chi-med 'od-zer (1574–1661), the one who has attained siddhis in a hidden way, the father of rGyal-dbang seng-ge (b. 1628) of Zva-phug [in] [s]Ku-thang, were from the Gur-phu family.⁴⁹

The reasons for the sub-sections [of that family] I do not know in detail. Further on, discussions and old legends and so forth, as they are not beautiful at length, I remain indifferent [about] them.

Here it is said:

Yes, possessing a dense grove of excellent qualities, a family of siddhas, [which is] a string of sandalwood trees, [their] narratives, a speech [with] a taming fragrance, delicious [and] strong: may it deliver the glory to clear the painful suffering of the ones with devotion!

A story according to the arguments of the ancient chronicles, although not worth to be repeated once more by a child without [any] knowledge, having seen that even the telling of a mere part of what has happened is rare, I have joined it together at length in the way of the voice of a learned one.

Although these days those who hold the spiritual lineage of a higher rebirth [are] a flock leading others, increasing like a youthful sprout growing in summer, a book, holding [such a] glory through the nectar of knowledge [and] understanding, [it is for] the benefit of [oneself and others, these] two, like the sky with a vulture [carrying] pollen [for all].

⁴⁹ The biography of Gur-ston dPal-mdzes rgyal-mtshan is not yet available. Up to now it is only known that he was a contemporary of Sa-skya Paṇḍita Kun-dga' rgyal-mtshan (1182–1251), who addressed an epistle to him under the title “Reply to the questions of the teacher [from the] Gur [family]” (*gur ston gyi zhus lan*); see Jackson (1991:234–237). rGyal-dbang seng-ge, also known as Chos-rje rDzong-pa, and his father 'Chi-med 'od-zer belonged to a branch of the Gur-phu family which originally had settled at rDzongsgo in sNying, a village in the south-eastern region of Gung-thang. It has already been noted that rGyal-dbang seng-ge had been one of the four main disciples—together with Rig-'dzin Gar-dbang rdo-rje—of rNgog-ston Karma Blo-bzang and that he was associated with the site called Zva-phug [Brag-dmar chos-gling] after his father had moved there in the year 1637; see Ehrhard (2001b:106) and Ehrhard (2004b:589 & 595, note 10).

Therefore, whoever has come in the later generation presently living, from the steps of a ladder of what has to be discarded [and] to be accepted, following the noble ones from before they have ascended the peak of the excellent edifice of complete liberation: may they stay on guard for the benefit of others!

Whatever was obtained of virtuous things from telling this way [of a narrative], may through this increase the doctrine of the highest vehicle of the Early Translations, the essence of the teachings of the Jina, together with [the number of] those, who hold it! And may myself [and] others attain the supreme [state of] a higher rebirth [and] final liberation!

Thus, the history of the lineage of the Glorious Gur-rigs mDo-chen [tradition], a discourse of a few words [entitled] “A Rosary of Rubies”: although earlier from the lord, the teacher, the protector of the circle that comprises all, the noble Nātha (i.e. Tshe-dbang 'Chi-med mgon-po), came the intention to compose an appendix to the *mDo chen bka' brgyud gser 'phreng*, as there did not manifest the request of the insistence of a person wishing [such a work], [later,] on top of [my own] wish to write [it] in order to fulfil the remains of the intention that had not ripened [yet] to a real receptacle, the one with an discriminative eye, the representative of the family of the mDo-chen-pa [tradition], the resident of dPal-sding, [known as] Tshe-dbang 'Gyur-med rgya-mtsho, requested again and again: “As a proper account for the latter generations through the force of the succession of the earlier arguments is like a star at day time, such a thing, it should be written in the form of letters!” Due to that, [and] because the history of the old chronicles which had been set down in letters was something seen and heard of in detail, not having the courage to relate [it] accordingly, nevertheless, what had become something to be understood [and] heard [by me] from the words of the noble teachers, and what had been condensed from the scattered [notes of] whatever was clear from the biographies of many noble ones, just that right amount, without exaggeration, it had been compiled by Chos-kyi dbang-phyug, the one free from worldly obligations, on the good twenty-first day of the great fourth Tibetan month of the wood female pig year [called] *yu-van* in the fourteenth sexagenarian cycle (i.e. 1815), at Brag-dkar rta-so, the great site of spiritual practice. The one, who wrote down [the text] was the [same] person, who had requested [it].⁵⁰

⁵⁰ Tshe-dbang 'Gyur-med rgya-mtsho, the person who requested Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku to compose his work and also acted as scribe, was the son of Tshe-dbang bDe-chen bzang-po and thus a nephew of Tshe-dbang 'Chi-med mgon-po. This is known from

May this also become the reason for the doctrine of the essence of the Vajra[yāna] of the definite secret mantras to spread wide and remain for a long time!

May it be virtuous! May it be virtuous! May it be virtuous!

the inscription of a beautiful thangka of Zangs-mdog dpal-ri, the celestial realm of Padmasambhava, ordered by Tshe-dbang 'Gyur-med rgya-mtsho upon the death of his father; for the scroll painting and the inscription, see Essen & Thingo (1989, vol. 1:202 & vol.2:174–175) and Essen & Thingo (1991:135). The inscription comes from the pen of Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku and refers in that case, like in the colophon of the present text, to Tshe-dbang 'Gyur-med rgya-mtsho as the “representative of the family of the mDo-chen-pa [tradition]” (*mdo chen pa'i gdung 'tshob*).

Appendices

Appendix I: The *mDo chen bka' brgyud gser 'phreng*

The “Golden Rosary” (*gser 'phreng*) of the mDo-chen bKa'-brgyud-pa lineage in two volumes was filmed by the NGMPP in [b]Tsum in 1994 under reel-nos. L 481/4 and L 481/5 to L 482/1. The first volume contains biographical accounts starting with the primordial Buddha Vajradhara and going up to the two founders of the “Upper 'Brug” and “Lower 'Brug” branches of the 'Brug-pa bKa'-brgyud-pa school, namely Lo-ras-pa dBang-phyug brtson-'grus and rGod-tshang-pa mGon-po rdo-rje. The second volume begins with biographies of Gar-ston [Sangs-rgyas] and Ma-bdun ras-chen and presents the latter's teaching lineage up to Gur-ston lHun-grub bkra-shis, the first representative of the Gur family. The text as such can thus be regarded as a compilation of the 15th century.

As these two volumes contain additional lineage prayers, religious instructions and in some cases different versions of one particular biography, they should be analysed in more detail in the future. In the context of the present study I will only give an outline of the text based on the notes taken by Paldor from the Tibetan Buddhist Resource Center, New York.

bKa' brgyud kyi rnam thar thog mar rdo rje 'chang gi rnam thar na rim par bzhugs so / bka' brgyud gser 'phreng stod cha, 365 fols. (margin: *ka*)

- | | |
|--|-----------------|
| 1. <i>rDo rje chang gi rnam thar</i> | fols. 1a–7b |
| 2. <i>Sa ra ha'i rnam thar</i> | fols. 7b–8b |
| 3. <i>Lo hi pa'i rnam thar</i> | fols. 8b–10a |
| 4. <i>rGyal po mda' ki ba'i (= dha ri ka pa'i) rnam thar</i> | fols. 10b–12b |
| 5. <i>lDing gi pa'i rnam thar</i> | fols. 12b–13b |
| 6. <i>Slob dpon klu sgrub kyi rnam thar</i> | fols. 13b–18a |
| 7. <i>Slob dpon chen po ma tang gi rnam thar</i> | fols. 18a–19b |
| 8. <i>Thang lo pa'i rnam thar</i> | fols. 19b–20a |
| 9. <i>Dom bi he ru ka'i rnam thar</i> | fols. 20a–24b |
| 10. <i>Slob dpon lva ba pa'i rnam thar</i> | fols. 24b–30b |
| 11. <i>Te lo pa'i rnam thar</i> | fols. 18a–31a |
| 12. <i>Na ro pa'i rnam thar</i> | fols. 31a–42b |
| 13. <i>Mar pa'i rnam thar</i> | fols. 43a–47b |
| 14. <i>rJe btsun mi la'i rnam thar</i> | fols. 47b–125a |
| 15. <i>Ras chung rdo rje grags pa'i rnam thar</i> | fols. 125a–131a |
| 16. <i>rJe btsun risang pa'i rnam thar</i> | fols. 131a–133a |
| 17. <i>mNyam med sgam po rin po che'i rnam thar</i> | fols. 133a–147a |
| 18. <i>Phag mo gru pa'i rnam thar</i> | fols. 147a–159b |
| 19. <i>Gling chen ras pa'i rnam thar</i> | fols. 159b–186b |
| 20. <i>gTsang pa rgya ras kyi rnam thar</i> | fols. 186b–219a |

21. *'Gro mgon lo ras pa'i sku gsum zhing kham ma* fols. 219a–225b
Written by dGe-sbyong tshul-khrims.
22. *Lo ras pa'i rnam thar chen mo* or *Chos rje rin po che'i sku gsung 'phrin las dang bcas pa'i rnam par thar pa yon tan mtha' yas pa'i gya mtsho* fols. 226a–295b
Written by dGe-sbyong tshul-khrims in dKar-po chos-lung.
23. *Lo ras kyi zhal chems* fols. 295b–298a
24. *Chos rje rgod tshang pa'i thugs dam bcu gnyis* fols. 298a–308a
Written by Byang-sems sher-gzhon.
25. *Chos rje rgod tshang pa'i rnam thar nya ngan 'das byung* fols. 308a–312b
Written by dBang-phyug rgyal-mtshan.
26. *gDung sob 'bar ba'i rnam thar* fols. 313a–365b

bKa' brgyud gser 'phreng las smad kyi cha rnams bzhugs so / mdo chen brgyud rnams mchis, 332 fols. (margin: *kha*)

1. *brGyud 'debs* fols. 1a–4b
2. *brGyud pa ring* fols. 4b–7b
3. *rTog ldan* (= *rTogs ldan*) *chen po gar ston pa'i rnam thar* or *Bla ma rtog ldan* (= *rtogs ldan*) *chen po'i rnam thar bde legs 'byung gnas* fols. 8a–26a
Written by Bla-ma dKon-mchog rdo-rje.
4. *rJe ma bdun ras chen gyi rnam thar* or *rJe'i rnam thar rin po che'i phreng ba* fols. 26b–70b
Written by dGe-sbyong 'Phags-pa dpal.
5. *Thugs sras gdan sa 'phags rin po che'i phags pa dpal gyi rnam thar* or *Bla ma dam pa'i rnam thar rin po che'i phreng ba* fols. 70b–112a
Written by Śākya dge-slong Byin-rlabs rdo-rje bzang-po (i.e. Chos-rje sTon-pa) at bKra-shis sdings-kyi pho-brang in a “hare year” (*gos lo*).
6. *mNyam med chos rje ston pa'i rnam thar* or *Chos rje byin rlabs rdo rje'i rnam thar yid bzhin nor bu mos gus bsam 'phel* fols. 112b–183b
Written by Śākya dge-slong Ye-shes rdo-rje in gDan-sa chen-po dPal-ldan mDo-bo che'i pho-brang in a “pig year” (*phag lo*).
7. *rTog ldan* (= *rTogs ldan*) *byang pa'i rnam thar tshul gsum rtsa lnga ma* fols. 184b–186b
Written by Chos-kyi seng-ge.
8. *rNam thar ka smad sum cu pa* or *rJe mtshan ldan dharma seng ge'i rnam thar* fols. 186b–188a
9. *Bla ma chos seng gi rnam thar* fols. 188a–189a
Written by Ye-shes dar.

10. *Bla ma chos rgyal gyi rnam thar* or *rJe'i rnam thar mdor
bsdus rin chen sgron me* fols. 189a–212b
Written by Ye-shes dar.
11. *Bya btang śākya dpal gyi rnam thar* fols. 212b–246a
12. *Bya btang śākya dpal gyi rnam thar bsdus pa* fols. 246b–250b
13. *Bya btang śākya dpal gyis mdzad pa'i dge sbyong tshul
khrims can* fols. 250b–252a
14. *Bya btang śākya dpal gyis mdzad pa'i mi rtag sgyur
dpe ma* fols. 252b–255b
15. *Bya btang śākya dpal gyis mdzad pa'i rtsa ba rgyud pa'i
gsol 'debs* fols. 255b–257b
16. *Mandal thos pa rgya mtsho ma* fols. 257b–258a
17. *gNas 'og min ma* fols. 258a–259b
18. *Chos rje lhun grub mtshan can gyi rnam thar gsol
'debs ma* fols. 259b–263b
Written by Śākya dge-slong Seng-ge dpal bzang-po at dPal-ldan Om-phug padma
dkar-po.
19. *Chos rje lhun grub mtshan can gyi rnam thar byin rlabs
kyi 'byung gnas* or *Chos rje rin po che gur phu ba zhes
mtshan yongs su grags pa de nyid kyi rnam thar byin rlabs
kyi 'byung gnas* fols. 263b–325a
Written by Śākya dge-slong Seng-ge dpal bzang-po at Yang-dben Seng-ge rdzong.
20. *rJe yang dgon pas mdzad pa'i smon lam le tshan bcu
bzhi pa* fols. 325a–329a
21. *bDe ba can gyi smon lam* fols. 329a–332a

Appendix II: The “Thob yig of the 17th Century”

The work published as “Thob yig of the 17th Century” is a compilation of records of teachings received by three members of the mDo-chen bKa’-brgyud-pa lineage and the Gur family. These are Nor-bu bde-chen (b. 1617), his grandson rGyal-sras seng-ge (d. 1752) and the latter’s son Padma rgya-mtsho. As the Tibetan introduction of the modern edition is of no help in identifying the respective records and the individual transmissions—and as some of the records are incomplete or have been wrongly arranged in the process of publication—the following description aims at making these materials more accessible.

An examination of these records shows that in the case of Nor-bu bde-chen two masters played a prominent role in the transmission of treasure teachings of the rNying-ma-pa school to this important member of the Gur family. These are O-rgyan dpal-bzang (1617–1677) and Kun-bzang klong-yangs (1644–1699), both originating from the Nepalese Himalayas, i.e. from the regions of southern Mustang and Jumla. As their respective biographies have survived it is possible to reconstruct the circumstances under which these particular transmissions of Buddhist teachings occurred. Especially the autobiography-cum-*gsan yig* of O-rgyan dpal-bzang is a rich source in this context, and it has already been used to document the spread of the teaching tradition of the treasure-discoverer Rig’dzin Zhig-po gling-pa to Sikkim. This happened at a time when a Buddhist monarchy had just been established in the country.¹

From this literary source it is also evident that O-rgyan dpal-bzang reached the area of lake dPal-mo dpal-thang in Gung-thang after his departure from Sikkim, and it was there that he heard the name of Bla-ma Nor-bu bde-chen for the first time. Having met him in person, O-rgyan dpal-bzang displayed the written documents stating that Nor-bu bde-chen was the prophesied holder of the treasure teachings of Rig’dzin bDud’dul rdorje (1615–1672), especially of the cycle known as *Dam chos sprul sku snying thig*. After the description of this encounter follows a detailed list of the transmissions received by O-rgyan dpal-bzang from Nor-bu bde-chen; this

¹ For a first assessment of the travels of O-rgyan dpal-bzang and his important role in bringing rNying-ma-pa treasure cycles from eastern Tibet to the Nepalese Himalayas, see Ehrhard (2001a:236–238). For O-rgyan dpal-bzang’s stay in Sikkim in the year 1646, when he received the treasure cycles of Rig’dzin Zhig-po gling-pa from Phuntshogs Tshe-ring rnam-rgyal alias mNga’-bdag Byams-pa bstan’dzin, compare Ehrhard (2005:21–22 & 26).

section of the autobiography-cum-*gsan yig* bears the separate title *sGyu ’phrul zhi khro’i thob yig ye shes ’od kyi me long*. The first list of teachings received as contained in the “Thob yig of the 17th Century” is that of Nor-bu bde-chen, and it opens with a particular transmission of the *Dam chos sprul sku snying thig* which he had obtained from O-rgyan dpal-bzang. This transmission occurred in the hermitage of Chos-rdzong in the La-[l]de[bs] valley, known as a “site of spiritual practice of the Jina Ma-bdun ras-chen” (*rgyal ba ma bdun ras chen gyi sgrub gnas*); it is dated to the year 1661.²

One of the following entries in the “Thob yig of the 17th Century” concerning teachings transmitted by O-rgyan dpal-bzang refers to another meeting between him and Nor-bu bde-chen in La-[l]de[bs] in the year 1666, just after the former had completed a three-year retreat at the sacred mountain Ri-bo dpal-’bar in Mang-yul Gung-thang. This encounter is also described in the autobiography-cum-*gsan yig*, where it is said to have lasted three months. Another entry in the “Thob yig of the 17th Century” referring to the master from southern Mustang deals with the transmission of O-rgyan dpal-bzang’s own records of teachings received to Nor-bu bde-chen during their first encounter in the year 1661.³

In the latter part of the “Thob yig of the 17th Century” one finds further transmissions obtained by Nor-bu bde-chen from several teachers, which turn up in the autobiography-cum-*gsan yig* of O-rgyan dpal-bzang as well. Two entries refer to the person of Phyong-rgyas ras-chen (17th cent.), who is characterized in the latter work as a disciple of Zhabs-drung Kong-po Kun-bzang rnam-rgyal, i.e. lHa-btsun Nam-mkha’ ’jigs-med (1597–1653), also known as the “Holy Madman from Kong[-po]” (*kong smyon*). O-rgyan dpal-bzang had met Phyong-rgyas ras-chen in the vihāra of Byams-pa sprin, and the list of teachings he received on that occasion bears the title *Srog sgrub kyi thob yig utpala’i phreng ba*. The teacher named rGyal-thang-pa Zil-gnon rdo-

² For the encounter between the two teachers and the section containing that particular record of teachings received, see the autobiography-cum-*gsan yig* of O-rgyan dpal-bzang (as in the Translation, note 26), fols. 256 b/1–276b/3. The teachings of the *Dam chos sprul sku snying thig* later became prominent in the Dol-po region in the Nepalese Himalayas through the activities of O-rgyan bstan-dzin (1657–1737), a disciple of O-rgyan dpal-bzang; see Ehrhard (1998:14–16).

³ For this second meeting between the two teachers see the text of O-rgyan dpal-bzang (as in the Translation, note 26), fols. 313a/7–314a/4. The entry in the “Thob yig of the 17th Century” containing the *gsan yig* of O-rgyan dpal-bzang mentions at the very beginning of the list a collection of the tantras of the Early Translations comprising forty volumes; see *ibid.*, p. 251.1–2 (*rnying ma’i rgyud ’bum po sti [= po ti] bzhi bcu’i gsan yig kha byang*).

rje, who is mentioned three times in the records of teachings received by Nor-bu bde-chen, also occurs in the autobiographical account of O-rgyan dpal-bzang, who had encountered that master, a member of the rGyal-thang-pa family, at the latter's residence Ling-ba Brag-dmar rdzong.⁴

The last person to be highlighted as a common acquaintance of both Nor-bu bde-chen and O-rgyan dpal-bzang is sNgags-'chang 'Chi-med rgya-mtsho, who has two entries in the former's records. This master is known as a disciple of the Third Yol-mo-ba bsTan-'dzin nor-bu, and he had fulfilled official functions on his master's behalf as overseer of the Bya-rung kha-shor stūpa in the Kathmandu valley and other religious institutions of the rNying-ma-pa school in the Nepalese Himalayas; he had invited O-rgyan dpal-bzang to the Hidden Valley of sKye-ba lung, and it was there that the transmissions of teachings occurred.⁵

The remaining parts of the "Thob yig of the 17th Century" describe the teachings obtained by rGyal-sras seng-ge and his son Padma rgya-mtsho. These masters can be placed in a wider context by comparing their records with the respective lists of masters of the New Treasurers from sMin-grol gling or the Northern Treasures from rDo-rje brag. For the present purpose it should be sufficient to show how the teachings of the mDo-chen tradition were transmitted in their individual cases and which constellations were formed with important Buddhist masters during that period. We are thus gaining further knowledge of how the transmissions of the mDo-chen bKa'-bryud-pa had been dispersed until the 18th century.

⁴ The meeting with Phyang-rgyas ras-chen and the list of teachings received on that occasion is described in the autobiography-cum-*gsan yig* (as in the Translation, note 26), fols. 287b/3–290a/7. According to Nor-bu bde-chen's accounts in the "Thob yig of the 17th Century", the person of rGyal-thang gZil-gnon rdo-rje was a seventh generation descendant of rGyal-thang-pa chen-po bSam-gtan 'od-zer; see *ibid.*, pp. 463.3 & 482.5. To this family belonged also rGyal-thang-pa bDe-chen rdo-rje, a disciple of rGod-tshang-pa mGon-po rdo-rje and author of a 13th-century biography of the great yogin Mi-la ras-pa; see Smith (2001:75–76) and Quintman (2006:108–114). For the role of rGyal-thang-pa bDe-chen rdo-rje in attributing the category "fortress" (*rdzong*) to the meditation sites of the great yogin Mi-la ras-pa and thereby giving prominence to the site of Ling-ba or Ling-nga Brag-dmar rdzong, compare Quintman (2008:375).

⁵ The invitation to sKye-ba lung, located on the newly established trade route between Nepal and Tibet, and the transmission of teachings from sNgags-'chang 'Chi-med rgya-mtsho to O-rgyan dpal-bzang are described in the autobiography-cum-*gsan yig* (as in the Translation, note 26), fols. 276b/7–277a/7. For the location of sKye-ba lung (not far from bDe-chen steng, the former residence of rGod-tshang-pa mGon-po rdo-rje), see Ehrhard (1997a:129). For the person of sNgags-'chang 'Chi-med rgya-mtsho alias Rig-'dzin sTobs-ldan dbang-po and his role as overseer of the Bya-rung kha-shor stūpa and further rNying-ma-pa monasteries in Nepal, compare Ehrhard (2007a:37–38).

A. Thob yig of Nor-bu bde-chen

1. *O rgyan lung zin skyes bu mchog / o rgyan dpal bzang zhabs drung du / o rgyan gter chos thob tho rnam / o rgyan bka' bzhin bkod pa*, 16 fols., pp. 1.1–32.4
 Transmissions of treasure cycles of Rig-'dzin bDud-'dul rdo-rje (1615–1672) received from O-rgyan dpal-bzang.
 - a. *Dam chos sprul sku snying thig* pp. 4.4–16.1
 - b. *Tshe sgrub tsha ba dmar thag* p. 16.2–5
 - c. *[bKa' rdzogs pa chen po dam chos] dgongs pa yongs 'dus* pp. 16.5–17.1
 Received at Chos-rdzong in La-[l]de[bs] in 1661.
 - d. *bKa' rdzogs pa chen po dam chos dgongs pa yongs 'dus* pp. 17.2–24.1
 Received at dPal-ldan lding in La-[l]de[bs] in 1666.
 - e. *Zab don gsang ba snying thig* pp. 24.1–26.6
 - f. *Yang gsang mkha' 'gro snying thig / snying gi thig le / tshe yang phur gsum* pp. 26.6–28.5
 - g. *Zhing skyong chen po kun dga' gzhon nu'i chos skor* pp. 28.6–32.4
2. No title, 20 fols. (incomplete), pp. 33.1–74.6
 Transmissions of treasure cycles and one spoken teaching lineage received from Kun-bzang klong-yangs. Text begins on fol. 8a, for the previous sections, see pp. 554.1 ff.
 - a. *gNam chos* of Mi-'gyur rdo-rje (1646–1667) pp. 33.1–44.2
 - b. *Yang dag snying po'i chos skor* of Gu-ru Chos[-kyi] dbang[-phyug] pp. 45.1–47.3
 Received in 1689.
 - c. *Thugs rje chen po 'khor ba dong sprug* of Gu-ru Chos[-kyi] dbang[-phyug] pp. 47.3–50.3
 - d. *Chos drug sras mkhar ma'i skor* of Gu-ru Chos[-kyi] dbang[-phyug] pp. 50.3–52.2
 - e. *sGrub chen dza ha bhir gyi snyan brgyud* of Jābir⁶ pp. 52.2–54.1
 - f. *rTsa gsum dril sgrub* of gTer-ston 'Jam-dbyangs bla-ma⁷ pp. 54.1–55.4

⁶ This particular hathayoga lineage passed through 'Bri-gung Rin-chen phun-thogs (1509–1557) and can be called a “Buddhacized” teaching of Nātha yogin doctrines as promulgated in Tibet. See Walter (1992:434, note 10); also compare Walter (1996: 145–146) and Walter (2003:26) for further details on the transmission of the “Jābir Cycle”. The Fifth Dalai Lama had received this transmission, also known as *Tshe sgrub pa'i rlung sbyor gyi skor*, too; see the text of Ngag-dbang Blo-bzang rgya-mtsho (as in the Introduction, note 13), vol. 4, pp. 240.1–243.2. He was also a member of this teaching tradition within the lineage of the Sa-skyapa master Tshar-chen mKhyen-brtse dbang-phyug (1524–1568); see *ibid.*, vol. 2, pp. 429.2–431.3.

⁷ The treasure-discoverer 'Jam-dbyangs bla-ma was regarded as a reincarnation of Rig-'dzin rGod-ldem phru-can and his major finding occurred in the region of Nyang-stod

- g. *rTa mgrin yaksha yang chung nag po* of Nyang-ral Nyi-ma'i 'od-zer (1124–1192) pp. 55.4–56.6
- h. *mKha' 'gro chen mo'i skor* of Nyang-ral Nyi-ma'i 'od-zer pp. 56.6–60.6
- i. *bKa' brgyad rig 'dzin yongs 'dus* of mNga'-ris Paṅ-chen Padma dbang-rgyal (1487–1524) pp. 61.1–66.3
- j. *sGrub thabs yon tan gter mdzod kyi kha skong* of mNga'-ris Paṅ-chen Padma dbang-rgyal p. 66.3–6
- k. *Thugs rje chen po 'khor ba dbyings grol gyi chos skor* of mNga'-ris Rig-'dzin Legs-ldan bdud-'joms rdo-rje (b. 1512) pp. 67.1–68.4
- l. *Zab lam 'pho ba ba'i gdams pa* of gTer-ston Nyi-zla sangs-rgyas (14th cent.) pp. 68.4–69.2
- m. *Ral dbang* of gTer-ston Me-long rdo-rje (1243–1314) pp. 69.2–70.1
- n. *Ratna gling pa'i gter ma* of Rig-'dzin Ratna gling-pa (1403–1478) p. 70.2–5
- o. *bZang po grags pa'i gter ma* of bZang-po grags-pa (14th cent.) pp. 70.5–71.3
- p. *sGyu 'phrul tshe dbang rong lugs su grags pa* pp. 71.3–72.6
- q. *mGon po dkar po'i tshe sgrub bdud rtsi 'khyil ba* of Nyang-ral Nyi-ma'i 'od-zer p. 73.1–6
- r. *rGya can skor nas tshe sgrub mdangs ma bcud 'dren* of the Fifth Dalai Bla-ma Ngag-dbang Blo-bzang rgya-mtsho pp. 73.6–74.2
- s. *Zab lam bde gshogs kun 'dus kyi skor* of Rig-'dzin gTer-bdag gling-pa (text interrupted on fol. 28b) p. 74.2–6
3. *rGyal dbang padma kāra yi / rnam 'phrul mchog gi sprul pa'i sku / bstan 'dzin nor bu'i zhabs drung du / bka' gter zab chos thob yig yod*, 11 fols., pp. 75.1–95.4
 Transmissions of treasure cycles received from the Third Yol-mo-ma sPrul-sku bsTan-'dzin nor-bu.
- a. *bKa' brgyad drag po rang byung rang shar* of Rig-'dzin rGod-ldem 'phru-can (1337–1408) pp. 76.1–82.6
 Received at dPal dNgos-grub mtsho-gling in Mang-yul in 1633.
- b. *rDzogs pa chen po ka dag rang byung rang shar* of Rig-'dzin rGod-ldem 'phru-can pp. 82.6–85.3
- c. *Gu ru drag po dmar chen gyi chos skor* of Nyang-ral Nyi-ma'i 'od-zer pp. 85.3–88.3
 Received at dPal dNgos-grub mtsho-gling in Mang-yul in 1633.

in gTsang. The cycle *rTsa gsum sgril sgrub* and the respective transmission were also received by the Fifth Dalai Bla-ma; see the text of Ngag-dbang Blo-bzang rgya-mtsho (as in the Introduction, note 13), vol. 3, pp. 346.2–348.6.

- d. *dPal mgon phyag bzhi pa'i chos skor* of Nyang-ral
Nyi-ma'i 'od-zer pp. 88.3–91.2
- e. *Dug dbang rdo rje pha lam* of Rig-'dzin rGod-ldem
'phru-can pp. 91.2–92.5
Received at dKar-ye [dNgos-grub mtsho-gling] in Mang-yul in 1633 together with
rGyal-sras Phyag-rdor nor-bu and sNgags-'chang Nam-mkha' kun-bzang.
- f. *Tshe'i dbang bskur zab mo* of Thang-stong rgyal-po
(1361–1485) pp. 92.5–94.4
- g. *gSol 'debs le'u bdun ma'i chos skor* of bZang-po grags-pa pp. 94.4–95.4
- h. *'Jam dpal dmar po* of Grva-pa mNgon-shes (1012–1090) p. 95.3–4
Not recorded in detail due to Nor-bu bde-chen's young age.
4. No title, 46 fols. (incomplete), pp. 97.1–190.6
Transmissions of treasure cycles and one Mahāmudrā lineage received from the father
Nam-mkha' seng-ge. Text begins on fol. 9a.
- a. *Thugs rje chen po ye shes 'od mchog gi skor* of O-rgyan
Dri-med kun-dga' (b. 1347) pp. 97.1–101.2
- b. *Bla ma dgongs pa kun 'dus* of gTer-ston Sangs-rgyas
gling-pa (1340–1396)⁸ pp. 102.1–128.6
- c. *sGrub skor rnam gsum* of Rig-'dzin rGod-ldem
phru-can pp. 131.1–138.3
- d. *bCom ldan 'das rdo rje phur pa'i chos skor* des Rig-'dzin
rGod-ldem phru-can pp. 138.3–141.6
- e. *rGyud bcu bdun gyi lung*⁹ pp. 142.1–146.5
- f. *'Jam dbyangs dkar po*
The transmission was not requested.
- g. *rDzogs pa chen po mkha' 'gro snying thig chos skor* of
Padma Las-'brel rtsal (1291–1319) pp. 147.1–150.5

⁸ The treasure cycle *Bla ma dgongs pa kun 'dus* of Rig-'dzin Sangs-rgyas gling-pa was propagated in the region of Mang-yul Gung-thang by gNas-pa Rab-'byams-pa Byams-pa phun-tshogs (1503–1581), who had received the transmission from his teacher rGod-tshang ras-pa sNa-tshogs rang-grol (1482–1559); see Ehrhard (in press c). It was this lineage which reached the Gur family through Nam-mkha' lhun-grub, a disciple of Byams-pa phun-tshogs.

⁹ This reading[-authorization] of the “Seventeen Tantras” (*rgyud bcu bdun*) of the Bi-ma snying-thig tradition of the Great Perfection teachings passed through dKar-chen Kund-ga' grags-pa (15th/16th cent.), a lineage holder of the treasure cycles of Dri-med kund-ga' and Rig-'dzin Sangs-rgyas gling-pa. He had visited the region of Mang-yul Gung-thang and that particular lineage was continued by Rig-'dzin mChog-ldan mgon-po (1497–1531) and his successors; see Ehrhard (2008:70–71). rGyal-sras bstan-pa'i 'byung-gnas, the son of the latter treasure-discoverer, is mentioned in the transmission as recorded by Nor-bu bde-chen.

- h. *Bla ma nor bu rgya mtsho'i skor* of Rig-'dzin Padma
gling-pa (1450–1521) pp. 151.1–156.6
Added sub-title: *lHo gter skor las bla ma nor bu rgya mtsho'i thob byin rlabs char 'bebs yod.*
- g. *Phyag na rdo rje dregs pa kun 'dul gyi skor* of Rig-'dzin
Padma gling-pa pp. 157.1–160.6
Added sub-title: *dPal phyag na rdo rje dregs pa kun 'dul gyi thob yig yod.*
- h. *Tshe sgrub rdo rje phreng ba'i chos skor* of Rig-'dzin
Padma gling-pa pp. 160.6–163.2
Added sub-title: *Tshe sgrub rdor 'phreng gi thob yig 'chi med gnam lcags rdo rje yod.*
- i. *Thugs rje chen po 'khor ba las sgröl gyi zab chos* of
gTer-ston Zhig-po gling-pa (1524–1583)¹⁰ pp. 168.1–172.5
- j. *dPal bde mchog dmar po'i chos skor* of gTer-ston
Zhig-po gling-pa pp. 172.5–173.6
- k. *Thugs dam zab pa skor* of gTer-ston Zhig-po gling-pa pp. 173.6–175.4
- l. *rTa mgrin nag po na ga (= nā ga) klu 'dul gyi dbang* of
gTer-ston Zhig-po gling-pa pp. 175.4–176.6
Received at lCogs[-ga] ri in La-[l]de[bs] in 1647.
- m. *Yang tig ye shes mthong grol* of Rig-'dzin bsTan-gnyis
gling-pa (1480–1535) pp. 177.1–180.3
- n. *Phag mo zab khrid kyī chos skor* of Rig-'dzin
bsTan-gnyis gling-pa pp. 180.3–181.5
- o. *[lTa ba] sangs rgyas dgongs 'dus kyī cha rkyen* of
Rig-'dzin bsTan-gnyis gling-pa pp. 181.5–182.4
- p. *rDo rje dmar kyī rjes gnang* of Grva-pa mNgon-shes pp. 182.5–183.4
- q. *mKha' 'gro ma seng ge'i gdong can chos skor* of Ba-ri
Lo-tsa-ba (b. 1040) pp. 183.4–184.3
- r. *Klu bdud naga (= nā ga) raksha'i skor* pp. 184.3–185.3
Lineage of Rin-chen gling-pa (14th cent.) or Gu-ru Chos[-kyi] dbang[-phyug].
- s. *Man ngag lam rim gyi skor* of gNubs Sangs-rgyas
ye-shes pp. 185.3–186.6
- t. *Zab mo bdud kyī gcod yul* of Pha dam-pa Sangs-rgyas
(d. 1105) pp. 187.1–190.6

¹⁰ The cycle *Thugs rje chen po 'khor ba las sgröl* had been discovered by Rig-'dzin Zhig-po gling-pa in the Jo-khang temple in lHa-sa in the year 1563 and was latter spread by the mNga'-bdag family to Sikkim; see Ehrhard (2005:23). The lineage mentioned here—and the further treasure teachings of Rig-'dzin Zhig-po gling-pa—passed through the Second Yol-mo-ba sPrul-sku Nam-mkha' brgya-byin, who had received it from the treasure-discoverer in person. It reached the Gur family through Nam-mkha' seng-ge, a disciple of the Second Yol-mo-ba sPrul-sku; see Ehrhard (2007a:29–30).

- u. *Phyag rgya chen po yi ge bzhi pa* p. 190.6
Text interrupted on fol. 55b.
5. No title, 36 fols. (incomplete), pp. 191.1–264.2
Transmissions of one spoken teaching tradition, different treasure cycles and a *gsan yig* received from O-rgyan dpal-bzang. Text begins on fol. 17a.
- a. *bKa’ brgyad bde gshegs ’dus pa* of Nyang-ral Nyi-ma’i
'od-zer¹¹ pp. 191.1–231.5
Added sub-title: *bKa’ brgyad bde gshegs ’dus pa’i thob yig tshangs pa lha’i gandhe*.
Received at dPal-ldan lding in La-[l]de[bs] in 1666.
- b. *Bla ma yang tig* of Klong-chen Rab-'byams-pa
(1308–1364) pp. 231.5–235.6
- c. *Theg mchog rin po che’i mdzod* of Klong-chen
Rab-'byams-pa p. 236.1–5
- d. *rDzogs chen kun bzang dgongs pa kun ’dus* of Rig-'dzin
Padma gling-pa pp. 236.5–241.3
Received at Chos-rdzong in La-[l]de[bs].
- e. *Thugs rje chen po mun sel sgron me’i skor* of Rig-'dzin
Padma gling-pa pp. 241.3–242.5
- f. *bDud rtsi sman gyi sgrub pa’i chos skor* of Rig-'dzin
Padma gling-pa pp. 242.5–244.1
pp. 244.1–245
- g. *Rig ’dzin padma gling pa’i bka’ ’bum*
- h. *Tshe sgrub rgyal ba ’dus pa’i skor* of gTer-ston Zhig-po
gling-pa pp. 245.3–247.4
- i. *Phyag rdor stobs po che’i skor* of gTer-ston Zhig-po
gling-pa pp. 247.4–248.3
- j. *Bla sgrub hūm nag snying thig* of Rig-'dzin 'Ja'-tshon
snying-po (1585–1656) p. 248.3–5
- k. *Rig ’dzin ’ja’ tshon snying po’i rnam thar mgur ’bum* pp. 248.5–249.4
- l. *Zhig po gling pa’i snyan brgyud dag snang gi skor* pp. 249.4–250.2
- m. *'Jam dpal a ra pa [tsa] na’i skor* of gTer-ston Zhig-po
gling-pa p. 250.2–6
- n. *Lung zin skyes mchog o rgyan dpal bzang de nyid kyi
gsan yig* pp. 251.1–263.6
Received at Chos-rdzong in La-[l]de[bs] in 1661.

¹¹ The text distinguishes between a “lineage of the spoken teachings” (*bka’ ma’i brgyud pa*) and a “lineage of the treasure teachings” (*gter ma’i brgyud pa*); see “Thob yig of the 17th Century”, pp. 223.2–226.5 & pp. 226.5–231.5. The distinction in the transmission of the initiations of the *bKa’ brgyad bde gshegs ’dus pa* cycle of Nyang-ral Nyi-ma’i 'od-zer is also acknowledged in the records the Fifth Dalai Bla-ma; see the different lineages in Ngag-dbang Blo-bzang rgya-mtsho (as in the Introduction, note 13), pp. 550.5–561.1.

B. Thob yig of rGyal-sras seng-ge

1. *bKa' 'drin mnyam med chos kyi rje / gter bdag gling pa'i rgyal ba sras / 'gyur med yid bzhin las (= legs) grub zhabs / zab mo'i chos kyi thob yig yod*, 22 fols., pp. 265.1–307.5
 Transmissions of treasure cycles received from [Zhabs-drung] Yid-bzhin legs-grub (1689–1718), the younger son of Rig-'dzin gTer-bdag gling-pa (1646–1714).
 - a. *Bla ma drag po'i skor* of gTer-chen Ratna gling-pa (1403–1478) pp. 266.1–271.4
 - b. *Tshe khrid rdo rje phreng ba* of Rig-'dzin Padma gling-pa pp. 271.3–274.1
 - c. *Phag mo zab brgya* of Rig-'dzin rGod-ldem phru-can pp. 274.1–275.4
 - d. *rGyud bcu bdun* pp. 275.4–279.2
 - e. Different reading[–authorizations] pp. 279.2–282.1
 - f. *sGrub thabs 'dod 'jo'i bum bzang* of Rig-'dzin gTer-bdag gling-pa pp. 282.2–307.4

2. *O rgyan lung zin skyes bu mchog / ngag dbang chos dpal rgya mtsho yis (= yi) / zhabs la spyi bos btud pa yis / rgyal sras seng ge'i thob yig yod*, 3 fols., pp. 309.1–313.6
 Transmission of treasure cycles received from [mKhan-po] Lo-tsä-ba Chos-dpal rgya-mtsho (i.e. Lo-chen Dharmasri, 1654–1717), younger brother of Rig-'dzin gTer-bdag gling-pa.
 - a. *Zab chos rig 'dzin thugs thig* of Rig-'dzin gTer-bdag gling-pa pp. 310.5–311.3
 - b. *Thos grol chen mo* of Karma gling-pa (1327–1387) pp. 311.4–312.5
 - c. *gCod kyi khrid* of Karma gling-pa pp. 312.5–313.1
 - d. *'Pho ba'i khrid* of Karma gling-pa¹² p. 313.1–6

3. *gTer ston gter bdag gling pa yis (= yi) / dri ma med pa'i gdung 'dzin pa / padma 'gyur med rgya mtsho las / yab chos zab gter thob yig yod*, 9 fols., pp. 315.1–331.5
 Transmissions of treasure cycles of Rig-'dzin gTer-bdag gling-pa from Padma 'Gyur-med rgya-mtsho (1686–1718), the elder son of the treasure-discoverer.

¹² The lineage of the so-called Bar-do thos-grol teachings is the one which reached the sMin-grol gling tradition through Byang-chub gling-pa bSod-nams chos-skyong (d. 1530) and sPrul-sku sNa-tshogs rang-grol (1494–1570); see Cuevas (2003:162–169). For further information on the residence of Byang-chub gling-pa in lHo-brag and the treasure cycles disseminated by him, compare Ehrhard (2008:66–67); two further teachings of Karma gling-pa were also transmitted by the aforementioned masters.

- a. *Zab chos rig 'dzin thugs thig* pp. 317.2–320.1
 b. *gShin rje dregs pa 'joms byed gyi skor* pp. 320.5–323.2
 c. *Mahā guru drag po* pp. 323.2–324.5
 d. *rDor sems thugs sgrub* pp. 324.5–326.2
 e. *A ti zab don snying po* pp. 326.2–327.3
 f. *sNgags srung e ka dzā [ti] chos skor* pp. 327.3–328.1
 g. *Thugs rje chen po bde gshegs kun 'dus* pp. 328.2–331.5
4. *bKa' drin mtshungs med bla ma rje / bstan pa'i nor bu'i zhabs drung du / gsang ngags bka' gter dbyer med kyis / rgyal sras seng ge'i thob yig yod*, 12 fols., pp. 333.1–356.6 (margin: *ka*)
 Transmission of one spoken teaching tradition, different treasure cycles and further works from the older brother bsTan-pa'i nor-bu.
- a. *sGyu 'phrul zhi khro* of the Gur-rigs mDo-chen tradition¹³ pp. 333.1–341.6
 b. *Thugs rje chen po ye shes 'od mchog* of O-rgyan Dri-med kun-dga' pp. 342.1–357.4
 c. *Zab mo bdud kyi gcod yul* of Pha dam-pa Sangs-rgyas pp. 357.4–351.6
 d. *Thugs sgrub gu ru rdo rje drag po rtsal* of Rig-'dzin rGod-ldem phru-can pp. 352.1–356.5
 e. *Mi la rnam mgur* and *Maṇi bka' 'bum* p. 356.5–6
5. *rDor brag rigs (= rig) 'dzin chen po'i thugs sras / nub dgon pa sngags 'chang rigs (= rig) 'dzin padma dbang gi rgyal po nas / bdag rgyal sras seng ges dbang lung thob pa'i yig chung zur bkod*, 11 fols., pp. 357.1–377.5
 Transmissions of treasure cycles and Mahā- and Anuyoga teachings received from Kham[s]-lung-pa Padma dbang-gi rgyal-po (1657–1731).
- a. *bKa' brgyad rang byung rang shar* of Rig-'dzin rGod-ldem phru-can pp. 359.1–365.5
 b. *Thugs rje chen po 'gro ba kun grol* of Rig-'dzin rGod-ldem phru-can pp. 365.6–368.5
 c. *rGyud gyi rgyal po gsang ba snying po* pp. 368.6–374.4
 d. *mDo chen dgongs pa 'dus pa* pp. 374.4–377.4

¹³ In the presentation of the transmission of the Māyājāla cycle following Chos-rje Ma-bdun ras-chen the text includes two interlinear glosses. After Kun-dga' gzi-brjid it is noted that the “lineage of the mDo-chen [tradition] is up to this [person] only one of Bhikṣus, [who are] Vajradharas” (*mDo chen brgyud pa 'di yan dge slong rdo rje 'dzin pa kho na yin*), and after Che-mchog rdo-rje it is stated, that “from this one onwards all [persons were ones] who protected the doctrine alone by holding the [family] lineage, and the [family] lineage was [then] divided into three [branches]” (*'di yan thams cad brgyud 'dzin kho nas bstan pa bskyangs shing / brgyud pa gsum du gyes so*); see *ibid.*, p. 341.4–5. For a possible identification of these three lineages, see note 17 below.

C. Thob-yig of Padma rgya-mtsho

1. *bKa' 'dri* (= *'drin*) *mnyam med chos kyi rje / rgyal sras seng ge'i zhabs drung du bka' gter zab chos thob yig*, 10 fols., pp. 379.1–398.6 (margin: *ga*)
Transmission of one spoken teaching tradition and different treasure cycles from the father rGyal-sras seng-ge.
 - a. *sGyu 'phrul zhi khro* of the Gur-rig mDo-chen tradition pp. 382.4–388.4
 - b. *Zab mo bdud kyi gcod yul* of Pha dam-pa Sangs-rgyas pp. 388.5–392.4
 - c. *sPrul sku snying rje'i 'pho ba* of 'Khrul-zhig dBang-grags rgya-mtsho pp. 392.4–393.4
 - d. *rDo rje phreng ba* of Rig-'dzin Padma gling-pa pp. 393.4–396.4
 - e. *Yang zab dkon mchog spyi 'dus* of Rig-'dzin 'Ja'-tshon snying-po pp. 396.5–398.6
Not received completely.
2. *gNyags rigs rdo rje slob dpon mchog / gsang sngags bstan 'dzin zhabs drung du / bka' gter zab chos ji snyed pa / ji ltar thob tshul*, 3 fols., pp. 399.1–403.4
Transmission of a treasure cycle from gNyags-ston Padma gSang-sngags bstan-'dzin, a disciple of Kham[s]-lung-pa Padma dbang-gi rgyal-po.
 - a. *rDo rje phag mo zab khrid* of Rig-'dzin bsTan-gnyis gling-pa pp. 401.2–403.4
3. *Byin rlabs thugs rje'i sprin phung tsam / mnyam med nam mkha' chos rje las / zab rgyas smin grol dam chos kyang / thob yig mu tig phreng mdzes*, 7 fols., pp. 405.1–418.5
Transmissions of treasure cycles of Rig-'dzin Gar-dbang rdo-rje (1640–1685) received from Nam-mkha' chos-rje, a disciple of the treasure-discoverer.
 - a. *Thugs rje chen po rtsa gsum snying thig* pp. 408.2–410.6
 - b. *Zab chos padma snyan brgyud* pp. 410.6–415.2
 - c. *rDo rje phur pa spu gri reg gcod* pp. 415.2–418.5
4. *Rig 'dzin chen po padma dbang rgyal gyi zhabs drung du byang gter sgrub skor rnams* (= *rnams*) *gsum gyi thob yig*, 13 fols. (incomplete), pp. 419.1–448.4 (margin: *ka*)
Transmission of different treasure cycles and further works from Kham[s]-lung-pa Padma dbang-gi rgyal-po.
 - a. *Rig 'dzin gdung sgrub* of Rig-'dzin rGod-lidem phru-can pp. 420.4–424.3
 - b. *gSang sgrub gu ru drag po* of Rig-'dzin rGod-lidem phru-can pp. 424.3–432.1
 - c. *Thugs rje chen po 'gro ba kun sgrol* of Rig-'dzin rGod-lidem phru-can pp. 432.2–435.3

- d. *'Chi med bdud rtsi'i bum pa* of rDor-'bum Chos-kyi grags-pa (11th cent.) pp. 435.4–441.2
Fol. 10 is missing.
- e. *Thugs rje chen po 'khor ba dbyings grol* of mNga'-ris Rig-'dzin Legs-dan bdud-joms rdo-rje (b. 1512) pp. 441.2–444.1
- f. *mTsho skyes rdo rje sku gsum rigs 'dus* of Byang-bdag bKra-shis stobs-rgyal (1550–1602) pp. 444.2–445.6
- g. Biography of [Tshar-chen] 'Jam-dbyangs mKhyen-brtse dbang-phyug (1524–1568) pp. 445.6–446.2
- h. *bKa' brgyad bde gshegs 'dus pa* of Nyang-ral Nyi-ma'i 'od-zer pp. 446.3–448.2
- i. Biography of the Second rDo-rje brag Rig-'dzin Padma 'phrin-las p. 448.2–4

D. Thob-yig of Nor-bu bde-chen

1. *Padma srid zhi yongs grol zhes / 'phyong rgyas ras chen zhabs drung du / rigs (= rig) 'dzin srog sgrub la sogs pa'i dgongs gter dag snang thob yig*, 6 fols., pp. 449.1–460.4
Transmissions of different treasure cycles from 'Phyong-rgyas ras-chen.
- a. *Zab chos rig 'dzin srog sgrub* of lHa-btsun Nam-mkha' 'jigs-med pp. 451.2–457.5
- b. *Zab chos rdzogs chen spyi ti skor* of gTer-ston Tshe-ring rdo-rje pp. 457.5–459.2
- c. *Rig 'dzin yongs 'dus* of mNga'-ris Paṅ-chen Padma dbang-rgyal pp. 459.3–460.4
2. *Byin rlabs thugs rje'i sprin spung can / ngag dbang zil gnon rdo rje las / zab rgyas smin grol dam chos kyī / thob yig utpala 'phreng tshogs*, 14 fols., pp. 461.1–487.2
Transmissions of different treasure cycles received from rGyal-thang-pa gZil-gnon rdo-rje.
- a. *rDzogs pa chen po ka dag rang byung rang shar* and *rDzogs pa chen po dgongs pa zang thal lhun grub* of Rig-'dzin rGod-ldem 'phru-can pp. 464.3–470.3
- b. *rDor sems snying thig* of Rig-'dzin Kun-skyong gling-pa (1396–1477)¹⁴ pp. 470.3–472.3

¹⁴ The transmission of the *dGongs pa zang thal lhun grub* of Rig-'dzin rGod-ldem 'phru-can—and the following one of the *rDor sems snying thig* of Rig-'dzin Kun-skyong gling-pa—passed through Bya-btang Śākya dpal-bzang, known as one of the teachers of Byams-pa Chos rgyal-mtshan from Nub-dgon; see Translation, note 12. The transmis-

- c. *Thugs rje chen po 'khor ba dong sprugs* of Gu-ru
Chos[-kyi] dbang[-phyug] pp. 472.3–473.4
- d. *Gu ru drag dmar* of Rin-chen gling-pa pp. 473.4–475.3
- e. *Chos skyong bstan srung* of Rig-'dzin rGod-ldem
'phru-can pp. 475.3–476.4
- f. *Yang bzlog me'i spu gri*
No transmission given. pp. 476.4–478.1
- g. *Padma dbang chen yang dag khros pa* of Grub-thob
Dar-phyar [Rin-chen bzang-po]¹⁵ pp. 478.2–482.6
- h. *bKa' srung chos kyi sgron me* of Rin-chen gling-pa pp. 482.1–483.5
- i. *Ma gcig rgyal thang lugs*
Text interrupted. pp. 483.5–484.3
- j. *mKha' 'gro yang tig* of Klong-chen Rab-'byams-pa pp. 485.1–487.2
Not all sections of the cycle received.
3. *gTer ston bstan gnyis gling pa yis (= yi) / dri ma med pa'i gdung 'dzin pa / sngags 'chang nam mkha' kun bzang las / yab chos zab gter thob yig yod, 4 fols.*, pp. 489.1–495.6
Transmission of a treasure cycle of Rig-'dzin bsTan-gnyis gling-pa by the latter's grandson sNgags-'chang Nam-mkha' kun-bzang.
- a. [*lTa ba*] *sangs rgyas dgongs 'dus*¹⁶ pp. 489.4–495.6

sion of the *Ka dag rang byung rang shar* reached rGyal-thang-pa Zil-gnon rdo-rje through one mChog-sprul Byams-pa Śākya rgyal-mtshan, who stood in the teaching lineage of Byams-pa Chos rgyal-mtshan. Under the name sPrul-pa'i sku-mchog rGyal-sras Sems-dpa' chen-po Śākya rgyal-mtshan the latter master is also known as one of the teachers of the Third Yol-mo-ba sPrul-sku; for a description of the transmission of the two treasure cycles of Rig-'dzin rGod-ldem 'phru-can—preceded by the one of the *rDor sems snying thig*—, see bsTan-'dzin nor-bu (as in the Introduction, note 10), pp. 167.5–169.4, and Bogin (2005:178–179). This lineage of the *Ka dag rang byung rang shar* had been received by Nor-bu bde-chen already on an earlier occasion directly from the Third Yol-mo-ba sPrul-sku; see Appendix II: I.3.b.

¹⁵ This teaching lineage of the treasure cycle *Padma dbang chen yang gsang khros pa* was propagated by Mus-sred-pa Kun-mkhyen dPal-ldan seng-ge, one of the teachers of Gurston lHun-grub bkra-shis; see Translation, note 13. A pilgrimage site in the vicinity of Rag-ma in sKyid-grong is associated with Grub-thob Dar-phyar, who is mainly remembered for the assistance provided to Sa-skya Paṇḍita in Mang-yul during the latter's encounter with the Brahmin scholar Harinanda; see Ehrhard (2004a:284 & 416–417, note 184).

¹⁶ After Rig-'dzin bsTan-gnyis gling-pa this lineage was passed on by Tshe-bdag rdo-rje to the Bo-dong-pa monk mNyam-med Chos-dbang rgyal-mtshan (1486–1553); for the contact between these two masters at the palace of the Gung-thang rulers in the year 1537, see Ehrhard (2000:40–41). mNyam-med Chos-dbang rgyal-mtshan had also been a direct disciple of Rig-'dzin bsTan-gnyis gling-pa and had received the cycle *lTa ba*

4. No title, 2 fols., pp. 497.1–499.1
Transmission of a treasurer cycle received from Rig-'dzin Gar-dbang rdo-rje.
- a. *Phag mo khros ma nag mo* of Nyang-ral Nyi-ma'i
'od-zer pp. 497.1–499.1
Received at Shel-phug rdzong in Mang-yul Gung-thang in 1677.
5. *Padma thod 'phreng rgyal ba nyid / snyigs 'dus 'gro ba brtser dgongs nas / sprul pa'i skur byon rig 'dzin rter (= rjer) / zab gter thob tshul po sta ka (= pu sta ka)*, 4 fols., pp. 501.1–508.1
Transmission of a treasure cycle received from Rig-'dzin Gar-dbang rdo-rje.
- a. *rDo rje sems dpa' thugs kyi me long* of Rig-'dzin
Gar-dbang rdo-rje pp. 501.1–508.1
Received at La-[l]de[bs] 'Brog in 1673.
6. *Padma thod 'phreng rgyal ba nyid / snyigs dus 'gro la brtser dgongs nas / sprul pa'i skur byon rig 'dzin rjer / zab gter thob tshul po sta ka (= pu sta ka)*, 3 fols., pp. 509.1–514.6
Copy of no. 5 with minor variations.

E. Thob-yig of rGyal-sras seng-ge

1. *Zab chos zhi khro dgongs pa rang grol kyi thob yig*, 4 fols., pp. 515.1–522.4
Transmission of a treasure cycle received from Kaḥ-thog Kun-bzang 'phrin-las [= Kaḥ-thog Rig-'dzin Tshe-dbang nor-bu].
- a. *Zab chos zhi khro dgongs pa rang grol* of Karma gling-pa pp. 515.1–522.4
2. *dPal ye shes kyi mgon po ma ning nag po'i thob yig*, 3 fols., pp. 523.1–528.7
Transmission of a treasure cycle received from Kaḥ-thog Kun-bzang 'phrin-las [= Kaḥ-thog Rig-'dzin Tshe-dbang nor-bu].
- a. *dPal ye shes kyi mgon po ma ning gi chos skor* of Rig-'dzin
'Ja'-tshon snying-po pp. 523.1–527.2
Added: prayer to the incarnation lineage of Kaḥ-thog Rig-'dzin Tshe-dbang nor-bu, written by O-rgyan 'Phrin-las bstan-'dzin dpal bzang-po.

sangs rgyas dgongs 'dus from the treasure-discoverer in person shortly after it had been recovered in the year 1528; see Ehrhard (in press a). In an interlinear gloss Nor-bu bde-chen refers to the biography of the Bo-dong-pa monk and the insertion of Tshe-bdag rdo-rje into this particular lineage; see *ibid.*, p. 495.6 (*chos dbang rgyal mtshan gyi rnam thar na / tshe bdag rdo rje brgyud pa la 'dzug dgos rgyu 'dug kyang / ding sang 'dzug pa'i gngang 'dug pa gang yin brtag pa'i gnas pa'o*).

F. Thob-yig of Nor-bu bde-chen

1. No title, 1 fol., pp. 529.1–530.6
Transmission of a treasure cycle received from rGyal-thang Zil-gnon rdo-rje.
 - a. *Gu ru'i gsol 'debs* of sPrul-sku bzang-po grags-pa
(14th cent.) pp. 529.1–530.6
Received at Ling-ba brag-dmar in Mang-yul Gung-thang.
2. No title, 1 fol., pp. 531.1–532.4
Transmission of 'Brug-pa bKa'-brgyud-pa teachings received from the father Nam-mkha' seng-ge.
 - a. *rJes gnang nyer lnga* of the Fourth 'Brug-chen Padma dkar-po (1527–1592)¹⁷ pp. 531.1–532.4
3. No title, 3 fols. (incomplete), pp. 533.1–534.6
Transmission of treasure cycles received from Phyang-rgyas ras-chen.
 - a. *rGyal po rnam thos sras ky'i chos skor* of Rig-'dzin Sangs-rgyas gling-pa pp. 533.1–534.2
No transmission given as a record of teachings received was not available.
 - b. *Khros ma nag mo'i chos skor* of Rig-'dzin Sangs-rgyas gling-pa pp. 534.1–6
Text interrupted.
4. No title, 1 fol., pp. 535.1–536.6
Transmissions of treasure cycles received from rGyal-thang-pa Zil-gnon rdo-rje.
 - a. *'Jam dpal rdzogs chen gyi skor* of gTer-ston Sar-ban phyogs-med¹⁸ pp. 535.1–536.6
5. No title, 1 fol. (incomplete), p. 537.1–4
Transmission of a treasure cycle received from sNgags-'chang 'Chi-med rgya-mtsho.

¹⁷ The description of the transmission closes with a note on the differentiation of the lineage into three branches; see *ibid.*, p. 532.2: “the necessary lineage, [i.e.] the lineage of the father, the lineage of the mother, [and] the lineage of the sons: they are [to be understood] according to the prayer” (*dgos brgyud pha brgyud / ma brgyud / sras brgyud gsum ni gsol 'debs ltar lags*). This statement might refer to the prayer at the beginning of volume two of the *mDo chen bka' brgyud gser 'phreng*; see Appendix I.

¹⁸ This treasure cycle and its transmission, which passed through Rig-'dzin rGod-ldem phru-can, had also been received by the Fifth Dalai Bla-ma. The site where the treasure was retrieved is known as sTag-tshang Seng-ge bkra-shis dpal-phug; it is located in present-day Bhutan; see Ngag-dbang Blo-bzang rgya-mtsho (as in the Introduction, note 13), vol. 3, pp. 177.3–182.5.

- a. *sPrul sku snying rje'i 'pho ba* of 'Khrul-zhig dBang-grags
rgya-mtsho p. 537.1–4
6. *lHa lung dpal gyi rdo rje nyid / bsam bzhin sprul pa'i sku 'byon pa / rigs (= rig) 'dzin 'chi med rgya mtsho las / zab gter chos kyi thob yig*, 7 fols., pp. 539.1–552.6
Transmission of treasure cycles received from sNgags-'chang 'Chi-med rgya-mtsho.
- a. *Thugs gter 'khor 'das rang grol* of Bya mang-po gTer-ston
Byang-chub gling-pa (14th cent.) pp. 540.3–546.4
- b. *'Joms byed 'char kha sgam bu ma* of Dum-pa rGya
Zhang-khrom (11th cent.) pp. 546.4–550.5
- c. *Bla rdzogs thugs gsum* of Gu-ru Chos[-kyi]
dbang[-phyug] pp. 550.4–552.5
Text interrupted on fol. 7b.
7. No title, 7 fols., (incomplete), pp. 554.1–566.6
Transmissions of a biography and different treasure cycles from Kun-bzang klong-yangs.
- a. *Padma bka' thang* of Rig-'dzin Sangs-rgyas gling-pa pp. 555.4–556.6
- b. *Zab chos zhi khro dgongs pa rang grol* of Karma gling-pa pp. 556.6–562.1
- c. *gNam chos* of Mi-'gyur rdo-rje pp. 562.1–566.6
Text interrupted on fol. 7b, for the following sections, see pp. 33.1 ff.
8. *bKa' 'drin mnyam med chos kyi rje / nam mkha' seng ge zhabs drung du / gsar rnying bka' gter dam pa'i chos / ji ltar thob tshul pu sta ka*, 8 fols. (incomplete), pp. 567.1–582.6
Transmission of spoken teachings and treasure cycles from the father Nam-mkha' seng-ge.
- a. *sGyu 'phrul zhi khro* pp. 570.1–574.6
Received at [La-ldebs] dGon-pa chos-rdzong in 1633.
- b. *Na rag dong sprug* pp. 575.1–577.4
Added subtitle: *Na rag dong sprug kyi thob yig nyams chag dri 'khrud*.¹⁹
- c. *dPal ye shes kyi mgon po* of Nyang-ral Nyi-ma'i 'od-zer pp. 577.6–581.1

¹⁹ This spoken teaching lineage reached Ma-bdun ras-chen through his teacher Gar-ston rTogs-ldan chen-po. After Che-mchog rdo-rje it was transmitted by a certain Chos-dpal bzang-po. The text provides an interlinear gloss for that person; see *ibid.*, p. 577.5: “he is from the livestock of the mDo-chen-pa [family]; he is not identical with the great teacher [Chos-dpal bzang-po] of the sGo-mang [lHa-khang in rDzong-dkar]” (*mdo chen pa'i gnag tsha yin / sgo mang gi bla chen pa dang mi gcig go*). For this latter master, associated with the royal palace of the Gung-thang rulers and also known as rDzong-dkar Blachen Chos-dpal bzang-po (1371–1439), see Everding (2000:127) and Ehrhard (2004a: 258 & 367, note 90).

- Added subtitle: *dPal ye shes kyi mgon po legs ldan nag po'i thob yig.*
- d. *Ma mo bdun gyi mchod gzhung gcig tu dril ba mun sel sgron me* p. 581.1–6
Received in 1633.
- e. *Thugs rje chen po ye shes 'od mchog* of O-rgyan Dri-med Kun-dga' p. 582.1–6
Added subtitle: *Thugs rje chen po ye shes 'od mchog gi thob yig 'od kyi snang ba.*
Text interrupted on fol. 8b.

Two prayers inserted:

1. *Byang gter thugs rje chen po 'gro ba kun grol gyi bla bregyud gsol 'debs*, 1 fol. (incomplete) pp. 583.1–584.4
2. No title, 1 fol. (incomplete) pp. 585.1–586.2
Prayer to Rig-'dzin chen-po [Gar-dbang rdo-rje], composed by Gur-ston rGyal-dbang seng-ge (b. 1628), rGyal-thang-pa Zil-gnon rdo-rje and lHa-bdun mkhan-po Blo-bzang brtan-pa.
9. No title, 4 fols. (incomplete), pp. 587.1–594.6
Transmissions of treasure cycles of Rig-'dzin Gar-dbang rdo-rje, received from the treasure discoverer.
- a. *rDo rje phur pa spu gri reg gcod* pp. 587.1–592.4
- b. *Padma snyan rgyud* pp. 593.1–594.6
Text interrupted on fol. 7b.
10. No title, 3 fols. (incomplete), pp. 595.1–600.6
Text begins on fol. 8a.
Transmissions of treasure cycles of Rig-'dzin bDud-'dul rdo-rje received from O-rgyan dpal-bzang.
- a. *Zab don gsang ba snying thig* p. 595.1–6
Received in 1668.²⁰
- b. *Yang gsang mkha' 'gro snying thig / snying gi thig le / tshé yang phur gsum* pp. 596.1–598.3
- c. *Zhing skyong chen po kun dga' gzhon nu'i chos skor* pp. 598.3–600.6
Text interrupted on fol. 10b.

²⁰ After the transmission of treasure cycles of Rig-'dzin bDud-'dul rdo-rje in La-[]de[bs] in the years 1661 and 1666, this final encounter between O-rgyan dpal-bzang and Nor-bu bde-chen in the year 1668 must have taken place in southern Mustang. It is known that exactly in 1668 the former master undertook the first building work for his own monastic site, later known as sKu-tshab gter-lnga; see Ehrhard (2001:236–238). It can be assumed that Nor-bu bde-chen was present on that occasion.

G. Thob yig of rGyal-sras seng-ge

1. *Phyag chen lhan cig skyes sbyor kyi thob yig*, 1 fol., pp. 601.1–602.6 (margin: *cha*)

Transmission of a Mahāmudrā lineage received from sTag-rtse sKu-skye-ba Mi-pham Phun-tshogs shes-rab (1654–1715). Written in the eighth and ninth Tibetan months of the year 1711; final verse dedicated to Kaḥ-thog Rig-'dzin Tshe-dbang nor-bu in 1752.

One folio with unrelated material: pp. 603.1–604.4

2. *Lung phran bu rnam thob pa'i thob yig*, 1 fol. (incomplete), pp. 605.1–6
Transmission of minor teachings received from Kham[s]-lung-pa Padma dbang-gi rgyal-po.

Bibliography

Tibetan Texts

Anonymous

rSang ba sgyu 'phrul zhi khro gnyis kyi rtsa 'chams byung khung lo rgyus rtsa tshig bcas go gsal du bkod pa, 28 pp., Kathmandu: Chum Nile Labrang, n.d.

Kun-bzang klong-yangs (1646–1714)

rTogs brjod mu tig gi mchun bu (= *chun po*) *zhes pa'i gtam*, 93 fols. (manuscript), NGMPP reel-no. L 406/2.

Kun-bzang chos-'phrel, Brag-sne (20th/21st cent.)

rNam grol rtsangs rdo dmar ba'i gdung rabs lo rgyus deb ther padma rāga'i do shal, 319 pp., New Delhi: Dakney Tsan Domar Namdroling, 1998.

dKar-brgyud bsTan-'dzin nor-bu, Brag-dkar-ba (1899–1959)

gDan rabs lo rgyus drang srong dga' ba'i dal gtam gyi kha skong, 33 fols. In “The Collected Works of dKar-brgyud bsTan-'dzin nor-bu. A Recent Lama of Brag-dkar rta-so” (= Smanrtsis Shesrig Spendzod, 142). Leh/Delhi: S.W. Tashigangpa, 1996, pp. 1–66.

dKon-mchog rgyal-dbang (16th cent.)

mTshan ldan bla ma dam pa mnyam med chos dbang rgyal mtshan gyi rnam par thar pa / rin po che nor bu'i phreng ba, 129 fols. (xylograph), NGMPP reel-no. L 66/5 [= L 319/13–L 390/1].

Gong-dkar Bla-ma 'Phrin-las rnam-rgyal (17th cent.)

Gong dkar bla ma 'phrin las rnam rgyal gyi gsan yig, 415 pp. [Kathmandu]: rGyal-yongs sa-chen dpe-skrun khang, 2008.

Grangs-chen Rab-'byams-pa (16th cent.)

rJe btsun bla ma dam pa byams pa chos rgyal mtshan dpal bzang po'i rnam par thar pa ngo mtshar dad pa'i shing rta 'dren byed, 80 fols. (manuscript), NGMPP reel-no. L 14/2.

rGyal-dbang seng-ge, Chos-rje rdzong-pa (b. 1628)

sPrul sku rig 'dzin chen po gar dbang rdo rje'i snying po'i rnam par thar pa nges don rgya mtsho, 40 fols. In “Rig 'dzin chen po gar dbang rdo rje'i rnam thar phyi nang gsang gsum sogs,” Dalhousie: Damchoe Sangpo, 1984, pp. 5–89.

——— *Bya btang 'od zer rgya mtsho'i rnam thar nges don rgya mtsho'i snying po*, 61 fols. (manuscript), NGMPP reel-no. L 452/4.

Ngag-dbang Chos-dpal rgya-mtsho, Lo-chen Dharmaśrī (1654–1717)

gTer chen chos kyi rgyal po'i rnam thar dad pa'i shing rta, 177 fols. In

“The Life of gTer-bdag gling-pa ’Gyur-med rdo-rje of sMin-grol gling,” vol. 1, Paro: Lama Ngodrup & Sherab Drimey, 1982, pp. 1–354.

Ngag-dbang Blo-bzang rgya-mtsho, Fifth Dalai Bla-ma (1617–1682)

Zab pa dang rgya che ba’i dam pa’i chos kyi thob yig gang gā’i chu rgyun, 4 vol., Gangtok: Sikkim Research Institute of Tibetology, 1991–1992.

Ngag-dbang Ye-shes, ’Ba’-ra-ba (1700–1760)

dPal ldan bla ma kham lung pa chen po padma rig ’dzin dbang rgyal gyi rnam thar nyung ngu dad pa’i sa bon, 9 fols. (manuscript), NGMPP reel-no. L 5/19.

——— *dPal ldan bla ma dam pa rdo rje ’chang blo gros chos ’phel gyi rnam thar rin po che bai dūr ya’i ’od snang*, 22 fols. In “bKa’ brygud gser ’phren chen mo,” vol. 3, Dehradun: Ngawang Gyaltzen & Ngawang Lungtok, 1970, pp. 234–277.

Chos-kyi dbang-phyug, Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku (1775–1837)

gTer dbon rig ’dzin brygud pa’i gdung rabs lo rgyus nor bu’i do shal, 19 fols. (manuscript) [= Nya/2].¹

——— *rDo rje ma bdun ma’i lo rgyus sngon med legs par bshad pa’i bden gtam blo ldan dga’ bskyed dpyid kyi rgyal mo’i glu dbyangs*, 17 fols. (manuscript) [= Nya/11].

——— *dPal ldan gur rigs mdo chen brygud pa’i lo rgyus nyung ngu’i ngag gi brjod pa padma ra ka’i (= rā ga’i) phreng ba*, 22 fols. (manuscript) [= Nya/3].

——— *dPal ldan gzhung ’brug bka’ brygud gser phreng gi bla ma brygud pa’i rnam thar dang phyag rgya chen po’i spyi don ngo mtshar snyan pa’i sgra dbyangs*, 78 fols. (manuscript) [= Nya/18].

——— *dPal rig ’dzin chen po rdo rje tshe dbang nor bu’i zhabs kyi rnam par thar pa’i cha shas brjod pa ngo mtshar dad pa’i rol mtsho*, 189 fols. In “The Collected Works (Gsuñ ’bum) of Kaḥ-thog Rig-’dzin chen-po Tshe-dbañ-nor-bu,” vol. 1, Dalhousie: Damcho Sangpo, 1976, pp. 1–376.

——— *Bya bral ba chos kyi dbang phyug gi rang ’tshang lhug par brjod pa ’khrul snang sgyu ma’i rol rtsed*, 265 fols. (manuscript) [= Kha/1].

——— *Zab rgyas chos tshul rgya mtsho las / rang skal du ji ltar thob pa’i yi ge rnam grol bdud rtsi bum bzang*, 333 fols. (manuscript) [= Ga/1].

¹ The information contained in square brackets refers to volume number and text number within the volume of Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku’s collected works according to the list found in Ehrhard (2004a:536–564).

- mChog-ldan mgon-po, Rig-'dzin (1497–1531)
sPrul sku rigs (= rig) 'dzin mchog ldan mgon po'i rnam thar mgur 'bum dad ldan spro bar bskyed byed, 241 fols. (xylograph), NGMPP reel-no. L 9/3 [= L 189/4].
- bsTan-gnyis gling-pa, Rig-'dzin (1480–1535)
sPrul sku bstan gnyis gling pa padma tshé dbang rgyal po'i rnam thar yid bzhin nor bu, 94 fols. (xylograph), NGMPP reel-no. L 143/5.
- bsTan-'dzin nor-bu, Third Yol-mo-ba sPrul-sku (1598–1644)
Rang gi rtogs pa brjod pa rdo rje'i sgra ma'i brgyud (= rgyud) mangs, 102 fols. In "The Autobiography and Collected Writings (gSun thor bu) of the Third Rig-'dzin Yol-mo-ba sPrul-sku bsTan-'dzin nor-bu," vol. 1, Dalhousie: Damcho Sangpo, 1977, pp. 63–267.
- Dri-med Kun-dga', O-rgyan (b. 1347)
Thugs rje chen po ye śés 'od mchog. "A rare cycle of Avalokiteśvara practice revealed from Mchims phu." 2 vols., Dalhousie: Damchoe Sangpo, 1978.
- sNa-tshogs rang-grol, rGod-tshang ras-chen (1482–1559)
gTsang smyon he ru ka phyogs thams cad las rnam par rgyal ba'i rnam thar rdo rje theg pa'i gsal byed nyi ma'i snying po, 146 fols. In "The Life of the Saint of Gtsa'i" (= Śata-piṭaka Series, 79). New Delhi: Lokesh Chandra, 1969, pp. 1–292.
- Padma dkar-po, Fourth 'Brug-chen (1527–1592)
Chos 'byung bstan pa'i padma rgyas pa'i nyin byed (= Gang can rig mdzod, 19), 464 pp., Lhasa: Bod-ljongs bod-yig dpe-rnying dpe-skrun khang, 1992.
- Padma 'phrin-las, rDo-rje brag Rig-'dzin (1640–1718)
'Dus pa mdo dbang gi bla ma brygud pa'i rnam thar ngo mtshar dad pa'i phreng ba, 213 fols. In "Bka' ma mdo dba'i gi bla ma brgyud pa'i rnam thar and Rig 'dzin Ngag gi dba'i po'i rnam thar" (= Smanrtsis Shesrig Spenzod, 37). Leh: S.W. Tashigangpa, 1972, pp. 1–426.
- Byams-pa phun-tshogs, gNas Rab-'byams-pa (1503–1581)
mKhas grub chen po byams pa phun tshogs kyi rnam thar ngo mtshar snang ba'i nyin byed yid bzhin nor bu dgos 'dod kun 'byung dad pa'i gsal 'debs, 93 fols. (xylograph), NGMPP reel-no. L 783/3.
- Blo-gros rgyal-mtshan, Sog-bzlog-pa (1552–1624)
Slob dpon sangs rgyas gnyis pa padma 'byung gnas kyi rnam pa thar pa yid kiy mun sel, 128 fols., n.p., n.d.

- Blo-bzang chos-grags, Chos-mkhar mkhan-chen (17th/18th cent.)
rJe btsun bla ma 'jam dbyangs bkra shis rgya mtsho'i rnam par thar pa rags bsdus snying gi me long, 24 fols. (xylograph), NGMPP reel-no. L 10/5.
- Mi-pham dGe-legs rnam-par rgyal-ba, Bod mkhas-pa (1618–1685)
rJe btsun grub pa'i dbang phyug dam pa dpag bsam ye shes zhabs kyi rnam par thar pa mchog gi spyod tshul rgya mtsho'i snying po, 67 fols. (xylograph), NGMPP reel-no. L 13/5.
- Tshe-dbang nor-bu, Kaḥ-thog Rig-'dzin (1698–1755)
Chab shog skor. 173 fols. In “The Collected Works (Gsuñ 'bum) of Kaḥ-thog Rig-'dzin chen-po Tshe-dbañ-nor-bu,” vol. 3, Dalhousie: Damcho Sangpo, 1977, pp. 403–748.
- *Bod rje lha btsan po'i gdung rabs mnga' ris smad mang yul gung thang du ji ltar byung ba'i tshul deb ther dvangs shel 'phrul gyi me long*, 61 pp. In “Deb ther khag lnga” (= Gangs can rig mdzod, 9). Lhasa: Bodljongs bod-yig dpe-rnying dpe-skrun khang, 1990, pp. 89–150.
- *lHa rje mnyam med zla 'od gzhon nu'i bka' brgyud phyag chen gdams pa ji tsam nod pa'i rtogs brjod legs bshad rin chen 'byung khungs*, 45 fols. In “The Collected Works (Gsuñ 'bum) of Kaḥ-thog Rig-'dzin chen-po Tshe-dbañ nor-bu,” vol. 2, Dalhousie: Damcho Sangpo, 1976, pp. 155–243.
- Tshe-dbang 'Chi-med mgon-po, Gur-phu-ba (1755–1807)
Khregs chod lta ba'i gnas lugs snying po don gyi man ngag gi bshad 'grel man ngag rin po che'i snye ma, 32 fols. In “Collected Writings and Autobiographical Material of mDo-chen-pa Tshe-dbañ-'chi-med-mgon-po.” Dalhousie: Damchoe Sangpo, 1979, pp. 427–456.
- *Gur gyi sngags ban tshe dbang 'chi med mgon po'i rang tshul chu 'babs su brjod pa lhung lhung snyan pa'i chu sgra*, 80 fols., *ibid.*, pp. 11–163.
- *rDo rje sems dpa' sgyu 'phrul drva ba zhi ba'i dbang po'i chos ga khrigs su byas pa kun rmongs snying gi gdug sel dri med zla ba'i chu rgyun*, 88 fols. (manuscript), NGMPP reel-no. E 2639/2.
- *rDo rje ma bdun ma'i bka' ji ltar bya ba'i tshul gsar du bkod pa zla shel gsar pa'i thig phreng*, 15 fols. In “Collected Writings and Autobiographical Material of mDo-chen-pa Tshe-dbañ-'chi-med-mgon-po.” Dalhousie: Damchoe Sangpo, 1979, pp. 427–456.
- *Rig 'dzin chen po karma bdud 'joms kyi rnam par thar pa gsal bar byed pa'i nyin byed ngo mtshar snang ba'i gter mdzod*, 132 fols., Delhi: Lama Dawa, 1982.
- gZhon-nu dpal, 'Gos Lo-tsā-ba (1392–1481)
Deb ther sngon po, 2 vols., Chengdu: Si-khron mi-rigs dpe-skrun khang, 1984.

Rin-chen rnam-rgyal, lHa-btsun (1437–1557)

rJe rgod tshang pa'i rnam thar rgyal thang ba bde chen rdo rjes mdzad pa la mgur chen 'gas brgyan pa, 116 pp. In “rGod tshang pa mgon po rdo rje'i rnam thar.” Hsining; mTsho-sngon mi-rigs dpe-skrun khang, 1993, pp. 305–421.

Sangs-rgyas dar-po (15th/16th cent.)

rGyal ba rgod tshang pa mgon po rdo rje'i rnam par thar pa mthong ba don ldan nor bu'i phreng ba, 304 pp. In “rGod tshang pa mgon po rdo rje'i rnam thar.” Hsining; mTsho-sngon mi-rigs dpe-skrun khang, 1993, pp. 1–304.

O-rgyan chos-'phel (b. 1755)

O rgyan chos 'phel gyi nyi tshe skye ba 'di'i rtogs brjod phyi'i rnam thar, 253 fols. (manuscript), NGMPP reel-no. L 407/11.

O-rgyan dpal-bzang (1617–1677)

Rigs brgya dbang po 'dren mchog slob dpon dpal bzang po'i rnam par thar pa dad pa'i spu long g.yo byed mthong bas yid 'phrog ngo mtshar 'phreng ba'i gtam rmad du byung ba, 309 fols., incomplete (manuscript), NGMPP reel-no. L 83/1.

Different authors

“Lesser known Tibetan Astrological Texts from the Phug-pa Tradition by O-rgyan dpal-'byor and others.” Dalhousie: Damchoe Sangpo, 1979.

“Thob yig of the 17th Century: A collection of records of teachings and initiations received by masters of the Gur-phu or Mdo-chen tradition of the Rñin-ma-pa.” Dalhousie: Damchoe Sangpo, 1980.

Western Literature

- Aris, M. (1975). "The University of California Expedition to Kutang and Nubri in Northern Nepal in Autumn 1973." *Contributions to Nepalese Studies*, 2:2, pp. 45–87.
- Blondeau, A.M. (2002). "Les *ma mo*: mythes cosmogoniques et théogoniques dans le *Rnying ma rgyud 'bum*." In *The Many Canons of Tibetan Buddhism* (= Brill's Tibetan Studies Library, 2/10). Leiden/Boston, pp. 293–311.
- Blythe Miller, W. (2005). "The Vagrant Poet and the Reluctant Scholar: A Study of the Balance of Iconoclasm and Civility in the Biographical Accounts of Two Founders of the 'Brug pa Bka' brgyud Lineages." *Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies*, 28:2, pp. 369–410.
- (2006). "'Brug pa'i lo rgyus zur tsam: An Analysis of a Thirteenth Century Tibetan Buddhist Lineage History." *The Tibet Journal*, 31:3, pp. 17–42.
- Bogin, B. (2005). "The Life of Yol mo bsTan 'dzin nor bu: A Critical Edition, Translation and Study of the Memoirs of a Seventeenth-Century Tibetan Buddhist Lama." Unpublished Ph.D. thesis, University of Michigan.
- (2006). "Royal Blood and Political Power: Contrasting Alligences in the Memoirs of Yol mo bsTan 'dzin nor bu (1598–1644)." In *Power, Politics, and the Reinvention of Tradition: Tibet in the Seventeenth and Eighteenth Centuries* (= Brill's Tibetan Studies Library, 10/3). Leiden/Boston, pp. 7–16.
- Childs, G. (2004). *Tibetan Diary: From Birth to Death and Beyond in a Himalayan Valley in Nepal*. Berkeley and Los Angeles.
- Cuevas, B.J. (2003). *The Hidden History of the Tibetan Book of the Dead*. Oxford.
- Dalton, J.P. (2002). "The Uses of the *Dgongs pa 'dus pa'i mdo* in the Development of the rNying ma pa School of Tibetan Buddhism." Unpublished Ph.D. thesis, University of Michigan.
- (2004). "The Early Development of the Padmasambhava Legend in Tibet: A Study of IOL Tib. J 644 and Pelliot tibétain 307." *Journal of the American Oriental Society*, 124:4, pp. 759–772.
- Davidson, R.M. (2002). *Indian Esoteric Buddhism: A Social History of the Tantric Movement*. New York.

- (2005). *Tibetan Renaissance: Tantric Buddhism in the Rebirth of Tibetan Culture*. New York.
- Dudjom Rinpoche (1991). *The Nyingma School of Tibetan Buddhism: Its Fundamentals and History*. Translated and edited by Gyurme Dorje and Matthew Kapstein. Boston.
- Ehrhard, F.-K. (1990). *Flügelschläge des Garuda: Literar- und ideengeschichtliche Bemerkungen zu einer Liedersammlung des rDzogs-chen* (= Tibetan and Indo-Tibetan Studies, 3). Stuttgart.
- (1993). “Two Documents on Tibetan Ritual Literature and Spiritual Genealogy.” *Journal of the Nepal Research Centre*, 9, pp. 77–100.
- (1996). “Two Further Lamas of Dolpo: Ngag-dbang rnam-rgyal (born 1628) and rNam-grol bzang-po (born 1504).” *Journal of the Nepal Research Centre*, 10, pp. 55–75.
- (1997a). “‘The Lands Are like a Wiped Golden Basin’: The Sixth Zhva-dmar-pa’s Journey to Nepal and His Travelogue.” In *Les Habitants du toit du Monde: Études recueillies en hommage à Alexander W. Macdonald* (= Recherches sur la Haute Asie, 12). Nanterre, pp. 125–138.
- (1997b). “Recently Discovered Manuscripts of the rNying ma rgyud ’bum from Nepal.” In *Tibetan Studies*, 1 (= Österreichische Akademie der Wissenschaften, phil.-hist. Klasse, Denkschriften, 256 / Beiträge zur Kultur- und Geistesgeschichte Asiens, 21). Vienna, pp. 253–267.
- (2000). *Early Buddhist Block Prints from Mang-yul Gung-thang* (= Lumbini International Research Institute Monograph Series, 2). Lumbini.
- (2001a). “Concepts of Religious Space in Southern Mustang: The Foundation of the Monastery sKu-tshab gter-lnga.” In *Kägbeni: Contributions to the Village’s History and Geography* (= Giessener Geographische Schriften, 77). Giessen, pp. 235–246.
- (2001b). “Religious Geography and Literary Traditions: The Foundation of the Monastery Brag-dkar bsam-gling.” *Journal of the Nepal Research Centre*, 12, pp. 101–114.
- (2002). “The Register of the Reliquary of Lord Rañ-rig ras-pa.” *Wiener Zeitschrift für die Kunde Südasiens*, 46, pp. 146–167.
- (2003). “Pilgrims in Search of Sacred Lands.” In *Sacred Landscape of the Himalaya* (= Österreichische Akademie der Wissenschaften, phil.-hist. Klasse, Denkschriften, 308 / Veröffentlichungen zur Sozialanthropologie, 4). Vienna, pp. 95–110.
- (2004a). *Die Statue und der Tempel des Ārya Va-ti bzang-po: Ein Beitrag zur Geschichte und Geographie des tibetischen Buddhismus* (= Contributions to Tibetan Studies, 2). Wiesbaden.

- (2004b). “The Story of How *bla-ma* Karma Chos-bzang Came to Yol-mo’: A Family Document from Nepal.” In *Three Mountains and Seven Rivers: Prof. Musashi Tachikawa’s Felicitation Volume*. Delhi, pp. 581–600 & 607.
- (2005). “The mNga’ bdag Family and the Tradition of Rig ’dzin Zhig po gling pa (1524–1583) in Sikkim.” *Bulletin of Tibetology*, 41:2 (= Special Issue: *Tibetan Lamas in Sikkim*), pp. 11–29.
- (2007a). “A Forgotten Incarnation Lineage: The *Yol-mo-ba sPrulskus* (16th to 18th centuries).” In *The Pandita and the Siddha: Tibetan Studies in Honour of E. Gene Smith*. Dharamsala, pp. 25–49.
- (2007b). “The Biography of sMan-sgom Chos-rje Kun-dga’ dpaldan (1755–1804) as a Source for the Sino-Nepalese War.” In *Pramānakīrtiḥ: Papers Dedicated to Ernst Steinkellner on the Occasion of His 70th Birthday* (= Wiener Studien zur Tibetologie und Buddhismuskunde, 70.1). Vienna, pp. 115–133.
- (2008). “Addressing Tibetan Rulers from the South: mChog-ldan mgon-po (1497–1531) in the Hidden Valleys of Bhutan.” In *Chomolangma, Demawend und Kasbek: Festschrift für Roland Bielmeier zu seinem 65. Geburtstag* (= Beiträge zur Zentralasienforschung, 12.1). Halle, pp. 61–91.
- (in press a). “Transmissions and Prophecies: Visiting Treasure Discoverers in lHo-brag.”
- (in press b). “The *gSan-yig* of the Fifth Dalai Bla-ma and Its Literary Sources.”
- (in press c). “gNas Rab ’byams pa Byams pa Phun tshogs (1503–1581) and His Contribution to Buddhist Block Printing in Tibet.”
- Everding, K.-H. (2000). *Das Königreich Mang yul Gung thang: Königtum und Herrschergewalt im Tibet des 13.–17. Jahrhunderts*, 2 vols. (= Monumenta Tibetica Historica, 1:6 [1–2]). Bonn.
- (2004). “rNying ma pa Lamas at the Court of Mang yul Gung thang: The Meeting of the gTer ston bsTan gnyis gling pa with Kun bzang nyi zla grags pa.” In *The Relationship between Religion and State (chos srid zung ’brel) in Traditional Tibet* (= LIRI Seminar Proceedings Series, 1). Lumbini, pp. 267–290.
- Huber, B. (2005). *The Tibetan Dialect of Lende (Kyirong): A Grammatical Description with Historical Annotations* (= Beiträge zur tibetischen Erzählforschung, 15). Halle.
- Hoffmann, H. (1950). *Quellen zur Geschichte der tibetischen Bön-Religion* (= Abhandlungen der Akademie der Wissenschaften und der Literatur in Mainz, Geistes- und sozialwissenschaftliche Klasse, 4). Wiesbaden.

- Jackson, D.P. (1991). "Several Works of Unusual Provenance Ascribed to Sa skya Paṇḍita." In *Tibetan History and Language: Studies Dedicated to Uray Géza on His Seventieth Birthday* (= Wiener Studien zur Tibetologie und Buddhismuskunde, 26). Vienna, pp. 233–254.
- Neumaier, E. (1966). "Mātarah und Ma-mo: Studien zur Mythologie des Lamaismus." Inaugural-Dissertation zur Erlangung des Doktorgrades der Philosophischen Fakultät der Ludwig-Maximilians-Universität zu München.
- Nebesky-Wojkowitz, R. de (1956). *Oracles and Demons of Tibet: The Cult and Iconography of the Tibetan Protective Deities*. The Hague.
- Quintman, A.H. (2006). "Mi la ras pa's Many Lives: Anatomy of a Tibetan Biographical Corpus." Unpublished Ph.D. thesis, University of Michigan.
- (2008). "Toward a Geographic Biography: Mi la ras pa in the Tibetan Landscape." *Numen: International Review for the History of Religions*, 55, pp. 363–410.
- Ramble, C. (2007). "The Aya: Fragments of an Unknown Tibetan Priesthood." In *Pramānakirtih: Papers Dedicated to Ernst Steinkellner on the Occasion of His 70th Birthday* (= Wiener Studien zur Tibetologie und Buddhismuskunde, 70.2). Vienna, pp. 683–720.
- Roerich, G.N. (1976). *The Blue Annals*. Delhi.
- Ronis, J. (2006). "Bdud 'dul rdo rje (1615–1672) and Rnying ma Adaptions to the Era of the Fifth Dalai Lama." In *Power, Politics, and the Reinvention of Tradition: Tibet in the Seventeenth and Eighteenth Century* (= Brill's Tibetan Studies Library, 10/3). Leiden/Boston, pp. 171–186.
- Schaeffer, K.R. (2004). *Himalayan Hermitess: The Life of a Tibetan Buddhist Nun*. Oxford/New York.
- Seyfort Ruegg, D. (2008). *The Symbiosis of Buddhism with Brahmanism/Hinduism in South Asia and of Buddhism with 'Local Cults' in Tibet and the Himalayan Region* (= Österreichische Akademie der Wissenschaften, phil.-hist. Klasse, Sitzungsberichte, 774 / Beiträge zur Kultur- und Geistesgeschichte Asiens, 58). Vienna.
- Smith, E.G. (2001). *Among Tibetan Texts: History and Literature of the Himalayan Plateau*. Boston.
- Sobisch, J.-U. (2007). *Life, Transmission, and Works of A-mes-zhabs Ngag-dbang-kun-dga'-bsod-nams, the Great 17th Century Sa-skyapa Bibliographer*.

- phile* (= Verzeichnis der Orientalischen Handschriften in Deutschland, Supplement Volume 38). Stuttgart.
- Sørensen, P.K. & Hazod, G. (2005). *Thundering Falcon. An Inquiry into the History and Cult of Khra-'brug Tibet's First Buddhist Temple* (= Österreichische Akademie der Wissenschaften, phil.-hist. Klasse Denkschriften 333 / Beiträge zur Kultur- und Geistesgeschichte Asiens, 46). Vienna.
- (2007). *Rulers of the Celestial Plain: Ecclesiastic and Secular Hegemony in Medieval Tibet. A Study of Tshal Gung-thang* (= Österreichische Akademie der Wissenschaften, phil.-hist. Klasse Denkschriften, 361 / Veröffentlichungen zur Sozialanthropologie, 10). 2 vols., Vienna,
- Vitali, R. (2007). "Historiographical Material on Early sKyid-grong (Gathered from Local Documents and bKa'-brgud-pa Sources)." In *The Pandita and the Siddha: Tibetan Studies in Honour of E. Gene Smith*. Dharamsala, pp. 286–303.
- Walter, M (1992). "Jābir, The Buddhist Yogi." *Journal of Indian Philosophy*, 20, pp. 425–438.
- (1996). "Jābir, The Buddhist Yogi Part Two: 'Winds' and Immortality." *Journal of Indian Philosophy*, 24, pp. 145–164.
- (2003). "Jābir, The Buddhist Yogi Part Three: Considerations on an International Yoga of Transformation." *Lungta* 13 (= Special Issue: *Cosmogony and the Origins*), pp. 21–36.

Index

Names of People, Families, Deities and Bodhisattvas

A-mes-zhabs Ngag-dbang Kun-dga'
 bsod-nams 31
 Ārya Va-ti bzang-po 59, 69
 Atiśa Dīpaṃkāraśrījñāna 72, 73
 Avalokiteśvara 22, 56, 59, 80
 'Ba'-ra-ba Chos-rje Nam-mkha' rdo-rje
 67, 68, 72, 79
 'Ba'-ra-ba Ngag-dbang ye-shes 83
 bDe-chen bzang-po. *See* Tshe-dbang
 bDe-chen bzang-po
 bDe-chen rdo-rje. *See* rGyal-thang-pa
 bDe-chen rdo-rje
 bDud-'dul dbang-phyug 32
 bDud-'dul mgon-po lde. *See* Kun-
 bzang Nyi-zla grags-pa
 bDud-'dul rdo-rje 91
 bDud-'dul rdo-rje. *See* Rig-'dzin
 bDud-'dul rdo-rje
 bKra-shis rgya-mtsho. *See* 'Jam-
 dbyangs bKra-shis rgya-mtsho
 bKra-shis stobs-rgyal. *See* Byang-bdag
 bKra-shis stobs-rgyal
 Bla-ma Byang-pa 26, 64
 Bla-ma Chos-kyi rgyal-mtshan 26, 64
 Bla-ma Chos-kyi seng-ge 26, 28, 64
 Bla-ma 'jigs-bral 76
 Bla-ma Śākya 23
 Bla-ma Zu-lung-pa 27
 Bla-ma Zur-khang-pa 65
 Blo-bzang chos-grags 82, 83
 Blo-bzang nyi-ma 32, 82, 84
 Blo-gros chos-'phel. *See* 'Dzam-gling-
 pa Blo-gros chos-'phel 82
 Blon-mo Ye-shes sde 62
 Brag-dkar-ba bsTan-'dzin nor-bu 14
 Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku Chos-kyi
 dbang-phyug 9, 14, 15, 17–30,
 59, 64, 71, 74, 79, 84, 86, 89,
 92, 94, 95
 'Brug-chen IV Padma dkar-po 57
 'Brug-pa Rin-po-che VIII Chos-kyi
 snang-ba 91
 bSam-gtan 'od-zer. *See* rGyal-thang-pa
 chen-po bSam-gtan 'od-zer

bsKal-bzang rnam-rgyal 32
 bSod-nams dbang-phyug 26, 64, 65
 bSod-nams 'dul-le 65
 bSod-nams lde. *See* Khri-rgyal bSod-
 nams lde
 bSod-nams rgyal-mo 32, 79
 bSod-nams rgyal-po. *See* Tshe-dbang
 bSod-nams rgyal-po
 bSod-nams seng-ge 23
 bSod-nams snying-po. *See* Chos-rje
 bSod-nams snying-po
 bsTan-'dzin 32, 79, 80
 bsTan-'dzin grub-pa'i rdo-rje. *See*
 Tshe-dbang bsTan-'dzin grub-
 pa'i rdo-rje
 bsTan-'dzin nor-bu. *See* Brag-dkar-ba
 bsTan-'dzin nor-bu
 bsTan-'dzin nor-bu. *See* Yol-mo-ba
 sPrul-sku III
 bsTan-'dzin rdo-rje 88, 89
 bsTan-gnyis gling-pa. *See* Rig-'dzin
 bsTan-gnyis gling-pa
 bsTan-pa'i nor-bu 23, 32, 79, 80, 82
 Bya-btang Śākya dpal 26, 64, 65
 Bya mang-po Byang-chub gling-pa 78
 Byams-pa Chos rgyal-mtshan. *See*
 Nub-dgon Chos-rgyal Byams-
 pa Chos rgyal-mtshan
 Byams-pa'i dpal. *See* Khro-phu Lo-tsā-
 ba Byams-pa'i dpal
 Byams-pa phun-tshogs. *See* gNas Rab-
 'byams-pa Byams-pa phun-
 tshogs
 Byang-bdag bKra-shis stobs-rgyal 22,
 23, 69, 74
 Byang-chub gling-pa. *See* Bya mang-po
 Byang-chub gling-pa
 'Byung-gnas. *See* 'Gyur-med 'Phrin-las
 bstan-'dzin
 Chag Lo-tsā-ba Chos-rje dpal 63
 Che-mchog-pa. *See* sNgags-'chang
 Che-mchog rdo-rje
 Che-mchog rdo-rje. *See* sNgags-'chang
 Che-mchog rdo-rje
 'Chi-med mgon-po 32
 'Chi-med 'od-zer 29, 93

- 'Chi-med phun-tshogs. *See* 'Gyur-med gSang-sngags bstan-'dzin
- 'Chi-med rgya-mtsho. *See* sNgags-'chang 'Chi-med rgya-mtsho
- Chos-dbang 32, 82, 84, 85
- Chos-dbang rgyal-mtshan 72, 73
- Chos-rje dBang-phyug mtshan-can. *See* bSod-nams dbang-phyug
- Chos-dbang rdo-rje 23
- Chos-grub bzang-po 23
- Chos-grub rgya-mtsho. *See* Zhva-dmar-pa X Chos-grub rgya-mtsho
- Chos-kyi dbang-phyug. *See* Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku Chos-kyi dbang-phyug
- Chos-kyi dbang-phyug. *See* Gu-ru Chos-kyi dbang-phyug
- Chos-kyi snang-ba. *See* 'Brug-pa Rin-po-che VIII Chos-kyi snang-ba
- Chos-kyi grags-pa. *See* rDor-'bum Chos-kyi grags-pa
- Chos-kyi rgyal-mtshan. *See* Bla-ma Chos-kyi rgyal-mtshan
- Chos-kyi seng-ge. *See* Bla-ma Chos-kyi seng-ge
- Chos-kyi seng-ge (of Glan) 61
- Chos-ldan 61
- Chos-rgyal ye-shes dar 28
- Chos-rje 'Brug-pa. *See* gTsang-pa rGya-ras
- Chos-rje bSod-nams snying-po 26, 27, 64, 66
- Chos-rje Byin-rlabs rdo-rje. *See* Chos-rje ston-pa
- Chos-rje dpal. *See* Chag Lo-tsä-ba Chos-rje dpal
- Chos-rje rDzong-pa. *See* rGyal-dbang seng-ge
- Chos-rje ston-pa 25–27, 60–64, 87
- Chos-skyong skyid-lde 65
- Dalai Lama V. *See* Ngag-dbang blo-bzang rgya-mtsho
- Dalai Lama VIII. *See* 'Jam-dpal rgya-mtsho
- Dar-'phyar 65
- dBang-phyug brtson-'grus. *See* Lo-ras-pa dBang-phyug brtson-'grus
- Dharmamitra 62
- Dharmaśrī 81, 86
- Ding-ston 63
- dKar-po Kun-dga' grags-pa 68
- dKon-mchog bsam-grub. *See* Rab-'byams-pa dKon-mchog bsam-grub
- dKon-mchog lhun-grub 32, 85, 87
- dKon-mchog rdo-rje 32, 68, 72
- dKon-mchog rdo-rje 58
- dKon-mchog tshul-khriims. *See* mKhas-btsun dKon-mchog tshul-khriims
- dMar-zhabs ras-pa 22–24
- Don-grub rgyal-mtshan 62
- Don-grub shes-rab 65
- Don-yod rdo-rje 32, 72
- dPag-bsam ye-shes 76
- dPal bzang-po 32, 87, 88
- dPal-ldan seng-ge. *See* Mus-srad-pa dPal-ldan seng-ge
- dPal-lding-pa. *See* 'Gyur-med 'Phrin-las bstan-'dzin
- dPal-mdzes rgyal-mtshan. *See* Gur-ston dPal-mdzes rgyal-mtshan
- dPal-mgon 32, 82, 84
- Dri-med kun-dga' 68, 89
- 'Dzam-gling-pa Blo-gros chos-'phel 32, 79, 80, 83
- 'Dzam-gling-pa family 77, 79
- Gar clan 57
- Gar-dbang 32, 85, 87
- Gar-dbang rdo-rje. *See* Rig-'dzin Gar-dbang rdo-rje
- Gar-ston rTogs-ldan 27, 58
- Gar-ston Sangs-rgyas 26, 57, 99
- gDan-sa Rin-chen-pa 'Phags-pa dpal 25, 26, 58, 60–64
- Glan family 61
- gNas Rab-'byams-pa Byams-pa phun-tshogs 72, 73
- gNubs Sangs-rgyas ye-shes 58, 75
- Grub-mchog Ye-shes chos-grags 86
- gSang-sngags bstan-'dzin. *See* 'Gyur-med gSang-sngags bstan-'dzin
- gSang-sngags bstan-'dzin. *See* Kham[s]-lung-pa gSang-sngags bstan-'dzin
- gSang-sngags chos-rgyal 23
- gSang-sngags sdong-po 26, 27, 58
- gTer-bdag gling-pa. *See* Rig-'dzin gTer-bdag gling-pa

- gTsang-pa rGya-ras Ye-shes rdo-rje 13, 56, 59
- gTsang-smyon Heruka 67
- Gur family 14, 20, 23–30, 55, 57, 65, 93, 99, 102
- Gur-phu family 93
- Gur-ston dPal-mdzes rgyal-mtshan 29, 30, 93
- Gur-ston lHun-grub bkra-shis 25, 27, 28, 30, 32, 57, 65, 66, 80, 99
- Gur-ston Nam-mkha' lhun-grub 23, 32, 72, 73, 85
- Gur-ston Nam-mkha' rdo-rje 72, 73
- Gu-ru Chos-kyi dbang-phyug 22–24, 58
- Guru Rinpoche. *See* Padmasambhava
- Gu-ru Thod-'phreng rtsal 23
- 'Gyur-med gSang-sngags bstan-'dzin 32, 86
- 'Gyur-med 'Phrin-las bstan-'dzin 32, 64, 84, 85, 87, 88
- 'Gyur-med rgya-mtsho. *See* Tshe-dbang 'Gyur-med rgya-mtsho
- 'Gyur-med rgya-mtsho. *See* Padma 'Gyur-med rgya-mtsho
- 'Gyur-med rnam-rgyal. *See* Rig-'dzin 'Gyur-med rnam-rgyal
- Heruka 17, 69, 70
- 'Jam-dbyangs bkra-shis rgya-mtsho 83
- 'Jam-dbyangs Nam-mkha' rdo-rje 68
- 'Jam-dpal gling-pa family. *See* 'Dzam-gling-pa family
- 'Jam-dpal rgya-mtsho 91
- 'Ja'-tshon snying-po. *See* Rig-'dzin 'Ja'-tshon snying-po
- 'Jigs-bral 32, 73, 85
- Jñānaḍākīnī 29
- Jo-bo family 79
- Jo-sras 57
- Kaḥ-thog Rig-'dzin Tshe-dbang nor-bu 20, 21, 82, 83, 88
- Karma bdud-'joms 23
- Karma blo-bzang. *See* rNgog-ston Karma blo-bzang
- Karma chos-'phel. *See* Ras-chen Karma chos-'phel
- Karma-pa XIII. *See* bDud-'dul rdo-rje
- Ke-ti phug-pa 23
- Kham[s]-lung-pa gSang-sngags bstan-'dzin 87, 88
- Kham[s]-lung-pa Padma dBang-gi rgyal-po 65, 81, 83, 88
- Khri bSod-nams dbang-phyug lde 73
- Khri lHa-dbang rgyal-mtshan 67
- Khri-rgyal bSod-nams lde 66
- Khro-phu Lo-tsa-ba Byams-pa'i dpal 58
- Kramer, Ralf 9
- Kun-bzang 'byung-gnas 23
- Kun-bzang klong-yangs 76, 77, 81, 102
- Kun-bzang Nyi-zla grags-pa 68, 71
- Kun-dga'. *See* Chos-rje Nam-mkha' rdo-rje
- Kun-dga' dpal-ldan. *See* sMan-bsgom Chos-rje Kun-dga' dpal-ldan
- Kun-dga' grags-pa. *See* dKar-po Kun-dga' grags-pa
- Kun-dga' rgyal-mtshan. *See* Sa-skya Paṇḍita Kun-dga' rgyal-mtshan
- Kun-dga' gzi-brjid 32, 67, 68, 72
- Kun-dga' lhun-grub. *See* Ngor Kun-dga' lhun-grub
- Kun-skyong gling-pa. *See* Rig-'dzin Kun-skyong gling-pa
- Kun-spang Nam-mkha' bsam-gtan 88
- Legs-grub bzang-po 32
- lHa-btsun Nam-mkha' 'jigs-med 103
- lHa-dbang rgyal-mtshan. *See* Khri lHa-dbang rgyal-mtshan
- lHa-gcig 73
- lHun-grub bkra-shis. *See* Gur-ston lHun-grub bkra-shis
- lHun-grub rin-chen 67
- Ling Ras-pa Padma rdo-rje 13
- Lo-ras-pa dBang-phyug brtson-'grus 13, 25, 57, 58, 82, 99
- Ma-bdun-pa mDo-bo che-ba 13, 14, 18, 19, 23–31, 57–64, 66, 74, 82, 99, 103
- Ma-bdun ras-chen. *See* Ma-bdun-pa mDo-bo che-ba
- Mahākāla 77
- mChims Nam-mkha' grags-pa 63
- mChog-ldan mgon-po. *See* Rig-'dzin mChog-ldan mgon-po
- mGon-gnang-pa. *See* Rig-'dzin 'Phrin-las bdud-'joms
- mGon-po 86
- mGon-po dpal 66, 67

- mGon-po rdo-rje. *See* rGod-tshang-pa
 mGon-po rdo-rje
 Mi-la ras-pa 14, 17, 62, 76, 82, 104
 Mitrayogin 68
 mKhas-btsun dKon-mchog tshul-
 khirms 27, 63
 mNga'-bdag Byams-pa bstan-'dzin. *See*
 Phun-tshogs Tshe-ring rnam-
 rgyal
 mNga'-ris gter-ston 76
 Mus-srad-pa dPal-ldan seng-ge 65, 66
 Nag-tsho Lo-tsā-ba Tshul-khirms
 rgyal-ba 63, 65
 Nam-mkha' brgya-byin. *See* Yol-mo-ba
 sPrul-sku II
 Nam-mkha' grags-pa. *See* mChims
 Nam-mkha' grags-pa
 Nam-mkha' 'jigs-med. *See* lHa-btsun
 Nam-mkha' 'jigs-med
 Nam-mkha' kun-bzang 20, 78, 79
 Nam-mkha' lhun-grub 32, 88
 Nam-mkha' lhun-grub. *See* Gur-ston
 Nam-mkha' lhun-grub
 Nam-mkha' rdo-rje. *See* 'Ba'-ra-ba
 Chos-rje Nam-mkha' rdo-rje
 Nam-mkha' rdo-rje. *See* Gur-ston
 Nam-mkha' rdo-rje
 Nam-mkha' rdo-rje. *See* 'Jam-dbyangs
 Nam-mkha' rdo-rje
 Nam-mkha' rgyal-mtshan 72
 Nam-mkha' bsam-gtan. *See* Kun-spang
 Nam-mkha' bsam-gtan
 Nam-mkha' seng-ge 23, 32, 73, 74,
 76, 78, 80
 Nam-mkha'i snying-po 74, 75, 82
 Ngag-dbang Blo-bzang rgya-mtsho
 22–24, 31, 78, 83
 Ngag-dbang Kun-dga' bsod-nams. *See*
 A-mes-zhabs Ngag-dbang Kun-
 dga' bsod-nams
 Ngag-dbang lHun-grub grags-pa
 Ngag-dbang ye-shes 32
 Ngag-dbang ye-shes. *See* 'Ba'-ra-ba
 Ngag-dbang ye-shes
 Ngor Kun-dga' lhun-grub 83, 84, 87,
 88
 Nor-bu bde-chen 23, 30–32, 66, 68,
 74–81, 85, 87, 92, 102–105,
 113, 116
 Nor-bu don-grub 32, 88
 Nub-dgon Chos-rgyal Byams-pa Chos
 rgyal-mtshan 65, 66, 69, 78
 'Od-zer dpal 63
 O-rgyan 32, 82
 O-rgyan bstan-'dzin 84, 103
 O-rgyan bstan-'dzin rdo-rje 91
 O-rgyan chos-'phel 84
 O-rgyan dpal-bzang 75, 77, 102–104
 O-rgyan gSang-sngags bstan-'dzin. *See*
 'Gyur-med gSang-sngags bstan-
 'dzin
 O-rgyan-pa Rin-chen dpal 59, 60, 69
 Padma dBang-gi rgyal-po. *See*
 Kham[s]-lung-pa Padma
 dBang-gi rgyal-po
 Padma dkar-po. *See* 'Brug-chen IV
 Padma dkar-po
 Padma gling-pa. *See* Rig-'dzin Padma
 gling-pa
 Padma 'Gyur-med rgya-mtsho 81
 Padma 'phrin-las. *See* rDo-rje brag Rig-
 'dzin Padma 'phrin-las
 Padma rdo-rje. *See* Ling Ras-pa Padma
 rdo-rje
 Padma rgya-mtsho 32, 69, 82, 83, 102,
 104, 112
 Padmasambhava 13–18, 22, 23, 26,
 27, 29, 59, 66, 75, 80, 86, 87,
 95
 Paldor 99
 'Phags-pa 58
 'Phags-pa dpal. *See* gDan-sa Rin-chen-
 pa
 'Phrin-las bdud-'joms. *See* Rig-'dzin
 'Phrin-las bdud-'joms
 Phun-tshogs shes-rab. *See* sTag-rtse
 sKu-skye-ba Mi-pham Phun-
 tshogs shes-rab
 Phun-tshogs Tshe-ring rnam-rgyal 102
 Phyag-rdor nor-bu. *See* sGam-smyon
 Phyag-rdor nor-bu
 Phyang-rgyas ras-chen 103, 104
 Rab-'byams-pa dKon-mchog bsam-
 grub 72
 Rāhu 75
 Rang-rig ras-pa 86
 Ras-chen Karma chos-'phel 76
 rDo-dmar-ba family 66
 rDor-'bum Chos-kyi grags-pa 21–23

- rDo-rje brag Rig-'dzin Padma 'phrin-las 56, 78, 82
- rDo-rje Byang-sman-ma 18, 20
- rDo-rje dByangs-ldan-ma 18, 20
- rDo-rje Gar-lon-ma 18, 20
- rDo-rje gSal-'phro-ma 18, 20, 21
- rDo-rje grum-po 58, 61
- rDo-rje Legs-ldan-ma 15–20, 23, 25
- rDo-rje Ma-bdun-ma 15–20, 59, 66
- rDo-rje Sa-lung-ma 17, 18, 20
- rDo-rje seng-ge. *See* rTsa-brgyad-pa rDo-rje seng-ge
- rDo-rje Yal-ldan-ma 19
- rGod-ldem 'phru-can. *See* Rig-'dzin rGod-ldem 'phru-can
- rGod-tshang-pa mGon-po rdo-rje 13, 18, 25, 57–60, 82, 99, 104
- rGya-gar-ma 69
- rGyal-dbang seng-ge 29, 30, 93
- rGyal-mtshan 32, 73
- rGyal-sras seng-ge 23, 32, 68, 69, 79, 81–86, 102, 104, 110, 115, 119
- rGyal-thang-pa bDe-chen rdo-rje 104
- rGyal-thang-pa chen-po bSam-gtan 'od-zer 104
- rGyal-thang-pa family 104
- rGyal-thang Zil-gnon rdo-rje 76, 103
- rGyal-tshab seng-ge 79
- rGya-ras-pa 57
- Rig-'dzin bDud-'dul rdo-rje 32, 74, 75, 78, 80, 102
- Rig-'dzin bsTan-gnyis gling-pa 20, 23, 25, 68–72, 79, 87, 89
- Rig-'dzin Gar-dbang rdo-rje 30, 76, 77, 83, 84, 88, 93
- Rig-'dzin gTer-bdag gling-pa 77, 78, 81, 85–88
- Rig-'dzin 'Gyur-med rnam-rgyal 23, 24, 32, 82–85, 87–89
- Rig-'dzin 'Ja'-tshon snying-po 83
- Rig-'dzin Kun-skyong gling-pa 64, 65
- Rig-'dzin mChog-ldan mgon-po 68, 69, 72
- Rig-'dzin Padma gling-pa 68, 91
- Rig-'dzin Padma 'phrin-las. *See* rDo-rje brag Rig-'dzin Padma 'phrin-las
- Rig-'dzin 'Phrin-las bdud-'joms 24, 71, 84–86, 88, 89
- Rig-'dzin rGod-ldem 'phru-can 66
- Rig-'dzin Sangs-rgyas gling-pa 73
- Rig-'dzin Zhig-po gling-pa 102
- Rin-chen dpal. *See* O-rgyan-pa Rin-chen dpal
- rNal-'byor chos-ldan. *See* Ma-bdun-pa mDo-bo che-ba
- rNam-grol rdo-rje 87, 88
- rNgog-ston Karma blo-bzang 76, 93
- rTsa-brgyad-pa rDo-rje seng-ge 65
- Śākya bzang-po. *See* Yol-mo-ba sPrul-sku I
- Samantabhadra 71
- Samantabhadra-Vajradhara 56
- Sangs-rgyas dbon-po 26, 64
- Sangs-rgyas gling-pa. *See* Rig-'dzin Sangs-rgyas gling-pa
- Sangs-rgyas ye-shes. *See* gNubs Sangs-rgyas ye-shes
- Sa-skya Paṇḍita Kun-dga' rgyal-mtshan 58, 61, 65, 79, 93
- Seng-ge dpal bzang-po 65
- Se-zhar 'bum-me 61
- sGam-smyon Phyag-rdor nor-bu 73, 74, 76–78
- Sher-pa 63
- Slob-dpon 'Gyur-med 14
- sMan-bsgom Chos-rje Kun-dga' dpal-ldan 88
- Smith, E. Gene 9
- sNgags-'chang Che-mchog rdo-rje 20, 23, 24, 32, 67–73, 79, 90
- sNgags-'chang 'Chi-med rgya-mtsho 78, 104
- sNgags-'chang 'Gyur-med rnam-rgyal. *See* Rig-'dzin 'Gyur-med rnam-rgyal
- sNyan-grags dpal-bzang 86
- So Ye-shes dbang-phyug 58
- sPas-skya family 78
- Srong-btsan sgam-po 17, 20
- sTag-rtse sKu-skye-ba Mi-pham Phuntshogs shes-rab 85, 86
- sTobs-ldan 86
- sTobs-ldan dbang-po. *See* sNgags-'chang 'Chi-med rgya-mtsho
- sTon-chen ras-pa 23
- Thogs-rdugs Sangs-rgyas. *See* Thogston Sangs-rgyas
- Thogston Sangs-rgyas 60, 61

- Thon/d-smyon 32, 73, 85
 Tre-mo sman-ne 61
 Tshe-dbang bDe-chen bzang-po 32, 85, 94
 Tshe-dbang bSod-nams rgyal-po 71, 73, 79
 Tshe-dbang bsTan-'dzin grub-pa'i rdo-rje 83
 Tshe-dbang 'Chi-med mgon-po 28, 29, 31, 84, 85, 88–92, 94
 Tshe-dbang 'Gyur-med rgya-mtsho 32, 95
 Tshe-dbang Legs-grub bzang-po 85
 Tshe-dbang nor-bu. *See* Kaḥ-thog Rig-'dzin Tshe-dbang nor-bu
 Tshe-ring rnam-rgyal. *See* Phun-tshogs Tshe-ring rnam-rgyal
 Tshul-khrims rgyal-ba. *See* Nag-tsho Lo-tsä-ba Tshul-khrims rgyal-ba
 U-ri-pa 57, 58
 'Ur-rtsa 28, 65
 Vajradhara 99
 Vajrapāṇi 58, 61
 Vajrasattva 88
 Ye-shes chos-grags. *See* Grub-mchog Ye-shes chos-grags
 Ye-shes dbang-phyug. *See* So Ye-shes dbang-phyug
 Ye-shes rdo-rje 63
 Ye-shes rdo-rje. *See* gTsang-pa rGya-ras Ye-shes rdo-rje
 Yid-bzhin legs-grub. *See* Zhabs-drung Yid-bzhin legs-grub
 Yol-mo-ba sPrul-sku I Śākya bzang-po 67
 Yol-mo-ba sPrul-sku II Nam-mkha' brgya-byin 73
 Yol-mo-ba sPrul-sku III bsTan-'dzin nor-bu 19, 20, 73–76, 78, 80, 104
 Zab-mo dge-ma 57
 Zhabs-drung Kong-po Kun-bzang rnam-rgyal. *See* lHa-btsun Nam-mkha' 'jigs-med
 Zhabs-drung Yid-bzhin legs-grub 81
 Zhig-po gling-pa. *See* Rig-'dzin Zhig-po gling-pa
 Zhva-dmar-pa Chos-grub rgya-mtsho 91
 Zil-gnon rdo-rje. *See* rGyal-thang Zil-gnon rdo-rje
 Zu-lung-pa. *See* Bla-ma Zu-lung-pa
 Zur family 61
 Zur-khang-pa. *See* Bla-ma Zur-khang-pa
- Geographical Names, Monasteries and Temples*
- A-ya 86, 87
 'Bar-ba lha-khang 62, 63
 Be-zho 62, 63
 bDe-chen steng 58, 59, 104
 bDe-sgron 60, 72
 bKra-shis sgang 62
 bKra-shis sding(s) 62, 67, 89
 Brag-dkar rta-so 14, 76, 85, 86, 94
 Bral-sgang 72, 73
 Brang Ze-mkhar 60
 'Bras-mo ljongs 87
 'Brog 72, 73, 78, 81
 bSam-yas 63
 bTsum 30, 62, 69, 72, 74, 78, 80, 82, 85, 87, 99
 Bul-'drud 62
 Bum-phug 89
 Byams-pa sprin 15, 17, 19–23, 25, 68, 69, 71, 73, 79, 84, 103
 Byang-ge 60
 Byang-phugs 65
 Bya-rung kha-shor stūpa 104
 China 29
 Chos-dkar gling 84, 85, 91, 92
 Chos-mkhar phug 83, 84
 Chos-rdzong 76, 84, 85, 89–91, 103
 dBus-gtsang 81, 84, 85, 90
 dGon-dkar Zil-gnon gling 72
 dGun-mda' 70
 Ding-ri 58, 65
 dKar-ye dNgos-grub mtsho-gling 75
 dKar-ye dPal-gyi nags-khrod 60–62, 66, 74–76
 dNgos-grub phug 88, 91
 Dol-po 84, 103
 Don-grub gling 62
 dPal-gyi ri 60
 dPal-khud 65
 dPal-ldan sding(s) 63, 64, 71, 86–88, 94

- dPal-lding/sding. *See* dPal-ldan
 sding(s)
- dPal-mo chos-sdings 83
- dPal-mo dpal-thang 102
- dPon-po Gong 78
- Drang-so 67
- Gang-bzang 57
- Glang-'khor 65
- Glo-bo 20
- gNas 19, 72, 73, 92
- gNya'-nang 58
- Gre-zla 60, 61
- Gru-'dzin dkar 89
- Grva 19, 78, 79, 82, 86, 87
- gSang-sngags bDe-chen gling 72
- gSang-sngags rTag-brtan gling 75
- gTsang-po river 65
- gTsang province 57
- gTsang-rang 20
- Gu-ge 20, 21
- Gung-thang 20, 26, 28, 30, 31, 60, 61,
 63, 65, 67, 71, 73, 78, 82, 83,
 93, 102
- Gur-phu 28, 60, 65, 71
- India 17, 29
 northern 16
- 'Jam-dpal bDe-chen 79
- Jumla 77, 102
- Kah-thog 56, 82
- Kailāsa 84
- Kathmandu valley 104
- Khams 74, 75, 92
- Khams-gsum rnam-rgyal 71
- Khra-tums 66, 71
- Khyung-lung Zhang-zhung 20, 21
- Kong-po 103
- Kun-dga' gling 72, 76, 81
- Kyirong. *See* sKyid-grong
- Ladakh 21
- La-ldebs 30, 62–64, 68, 71–74, 77, 79,
 80, 83–85, 88, 90, 92, 103
- Lan-'de. *See* La-ldebs
- La-stod Byang 64, 69
- La-stod lHo 58, 63, 67
- lCang 79
- lCogs-ga ri 62, 67, 68, 71, 72, 76, 77,
 89
- lDing-bzang 61
- lHa-mtsho srin-mtsho 78
- lHa-gdong/sdong 60–62
- lHa-sa 63
- lHas-chung 68
- lHo-brag 61, 83
- Ling-nga Brag 60–62, 76, 104
- Ling-ba Brag-dmar rdzong. *See* Ling-
 nga Brag
- Long-'phrang 60, 66, 71
- Ma-bdun phug 18, 59
- Mahācārya 87
- Mahāvīdyādhara 88
- Mānasārovar 84
- Mang-tsha 28, 60
- Mang-yul 61, 62, 69, 71, 75, 85
- Mang-yul Gung-thang 14, 15, 18, 20–
 22, 24, 27, 28, 56, 57, 60, 66–
 69, 71–72, 76, 83, 86, 87, 103
- Mang-yul sKu-lha 62
- Mang-yul sKyid-grong 58, 59, 61, 62
- mChod-rten nag-po 84
- mDo-bo-che 14, 28, 60, 61, 63, 66–
 68, 72, 77, 90
- mDo-chen 65, 71
- Me-sho lung-pa 17, 22
- mGon-gnang 88
- mKhar-bang 72, 73, 76, 80
- mNga'-ris Gung-thang 66–69, 73
- mNgon-dga' 72
- mTha'-'dul* temples 20
- Mustang 20, 21, 75, 76, 86, 102, 103
- Nepal 58, 63, 86, 90–92, 104
- Nepalese Himalayas 9, 14, 20, 30, 75–
 77, 84, 86, 102, 104
- Ngor 87
- Nub-dgon 26, 64, 65, 69, 81, 82, 88
- Nub-ris 14, 30
- Nyang-tshal 61
- Nyang 57
- Nyi-lhod 30, 69, 72, 78, 80
- 'Om-phug 65
- 'Os-por lung-pa 21, 22
- 'Phags-pa lha-khang 69
- Phu-lag 28, 60, 61, 65, 71
- Rag-ma 22
- Ra-la 82
- rDo-rje brag 56, 104
- rDzong-dkar 60–62, 66, 68, 72, 83
- rDzong-sgo 29, 93
- Ri-bo dpal-'bar 62, 69, 70, 71, 74, 76,
 103
- Rin-chen gling 62, 71

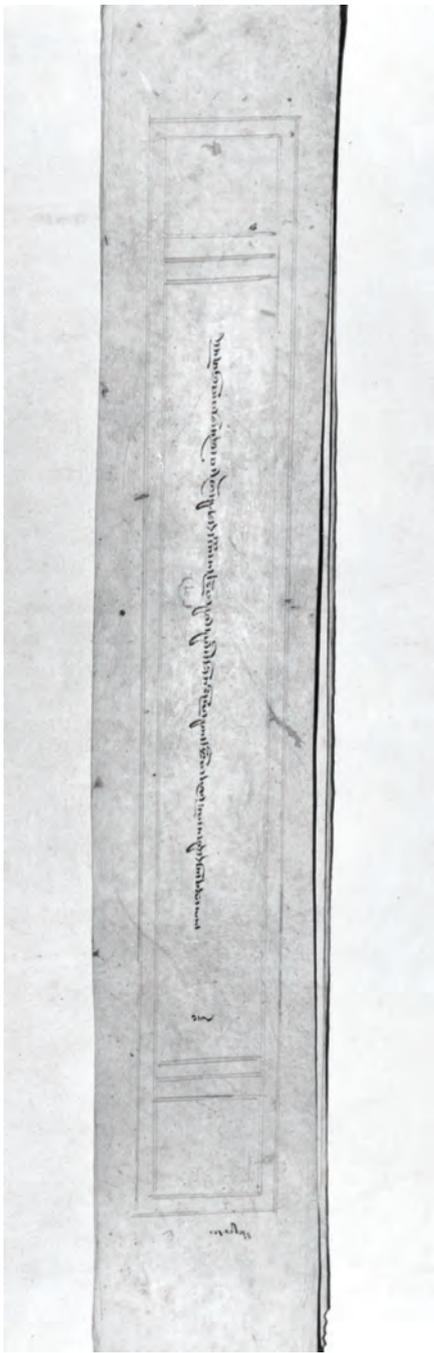
- Rin-chen sgang 62, 71, 72
 Rin-chen spungs-pa 60
 rGya-gar gling-chung 57
 rGya-lung 21
 rTag-brtan Rin-chen steng 74
 Sa-lung 17, 18
 Sha-ba ri-phug 21, 22
 Shal-smad 83
 Shar-sding 60, 61, 71
 Shar-phu 62
 Shar-sgom/sgam 60–63, 71
 Shel-mkhar 57
 Shel-ri dPal-gyi nags-ljongs 69, 71
 Sher-pa region
 Shug-khrod 71
 Sikkim 87, 88, 102
 sKu-lha dPal-rdzong 60–62
 sKu-rgyal 62
 sKu-thang 76, 93
 sKu-thang bTsum 60, 62, 72, 73, 81
 sKu-tshab gter-lnga 75, 77
 sKye-ba lung 104
 sKyid-grong 9, 13–20, 22, 30, 60, 63,
 68, 71, 73, 74, 76, 77, 79, 91
 sMin-grol gling 77, 78, 81, 85, 87, 91,
 104
 sMu-lug[s] 84, 91
 sNar-thang 63
 sNying 93
 So-chu 17
 sPang-zhing 17, 20–22, 60–62, 69, 74,
 86
 sPo-bo 74
 sPra-dun rtse 20, 21, 23
 Śrī gNam-lding 60, 61
 sTod 28
 Svayambhū 63
 Thini 75
 Tibet 91, 104
 Central 31, 56, 72, 77, 78, 81, 85,
 91
 eastern 75, 102
 south-western 9, 13–15, 17, 18,
 31, 59, 63, 66, 77
 Western 20, 28, 65
 Tsā-ri 91
 Tsa-ri-tra 90
 Tshong-'dus 21, 22, 58
 Tsum. *See* bTsum
 Yang-'dul temples 17, 22
 Yang-thog 63
 Yol-mo Gangs-kyi rva-ba 91
 Zangs-mdog dpal-ri 95
 Za-'og phug 82
 Zhe-chen 92
 Zur-mtsho 27, 63
 Zva-phug Brag-dmar chos-gling 93
- General*
- abhicāra* rites 78
abhisamaya 18
ādiṭyabandhu 56
 Anuyoga 56, 61
 “Armour of the Twelve Meditations”
 58
 astrology 86
 Atiyoga 56, 70
bDe gshogs kun 'dus 86
 bhikṣu 66, 67
 bKa'-brgyud-pa 9, 13, 25, 56, 57, 59,
 66
 'Ba'-ra-ba 57, 68, 72, 79, 81
 'Brug-pa 13, 14, 17, 24, 25, 27,
 58, 74, 76, 86, 99
 Karma 76
 mDo-chen 9, 14, 24–28, 30, 31,
 55, 57, 59, 76, 80, 99, 102,
 104
 Tshal-pa 62
bka'i srung ma 16
 bKa'-ma 24, 26, 27, 56, 63
Bla ma dgongs pa 'dus 73
 Bodhisattva(s) 56, 74
 Bo-dong-pa 66, 72, 73
brgyud pa 13
brgyud pa dngos 26
 'Brug
 Central 57
 Lower 13, 25, 57, 58, 99
 Upper 13, 25, 57, 99
'Brug pa'i lo rgyus zur tsam 13
 'Brug-pa yogin 76
bshad grva 65
bstan kyi bdag po 75
bstan ma bcu gnyis 23, 24
bu chen 13
 Byang-gter tradition/teachings 64, 65,
 82
che bzhi 13

- 'Chi med yang snying kun 'dus* cycle 87
chos brgyud 26
chung brgyad 13
 Collected Tantras 83, 84, 91
 collected writings/works
 of Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku 14,
 124
dākinī 22, 59, 79
Dam chos sprul sku snying thig 102, 103
daśabala 56
dBang chog tshogs gnyis chu rgyun ma 27
dGa'ldan pho-brang government 31
dGongs pa 'dus pa'i mdo 56, 81, 83
Dharmacakra 63
Dharmadhātu 60, 62, 92
Dharmakāya 63, 70, 80
Dharmarāja 77, 78
 of mNga'-ris Gung-thang 66–69
Dharma son 76
dKon mchog spyi 'dus 87
 “Doctrine of the Thirteen” 58
dPal mgon legs ldan cycle 84
dPal mgon ma ning 83
ganacakra 59
gdung rabs 25
glan lugs 61
 Great Perfection 88–91
Grub gzhung. See *mChod gzhung*
gser 'phreng 9, 57, 99
gShin rje dregs 'joms 86
gSo dpyad bdud rtsi bum pa 21, 22
gSol 'debs le'u bdun ma 86
gsung 'bum 9
 Gung-thang rulers
 castle of the 71
 domain of the 28
 royal house of the 20
 Gur-rigs mDo-chen tradition 19, 24,
 25, 30, 31, 55, 62, 64, 65, 66,
 71–73, 82, 91, 92, 94, 95, 104
 Guru Yoga 88
 Harvard University 9
 horse and g.yag circle 77
Jina(s) 55, 56, 80, 90, 94, 103
kalyānamitras 83, 85
khregs chod 89, 90, 92
Kbro thung gi las byang nag po 'gro shes
 77
Kun bzang thugs gter 'khor 'das rang grol
 78
laukika-level deities 16
Lhung lhung snyan pa'i chu sgra 92
 lineages
 eight lesser 13
 four great 13
lo rgyus 14
 Ludwig-Maximilians-Universität (Mu-
 nich) 9
 Ma-bdun tradition 82
ma gcig 20
Mahā gu ru sku gsum rigs bsdeus 74
Mahāmudrā 65, 76, 82, 86, 91
Mahāsattva 74
Mahāyoga 26, 56
ma mo chen mo bdun 16
ma mo bdun 14
Ma mo bdun gyi gcig tu sgril ba ma rig
 mun sel sgron me 23
Ma mo bdun gyi mchod gzhung gcig tu
 sgril ba ma rig mun sel 24
Ma-mo mched-bdun 15, 17, 18, 21–23,
 25
ma mo mdos 16
maṇḍala 17, 27, 78, 92
Mantradhara(s) 66, 67, 70, 72, 74, 78,
 82, 83, 85, 87, 88, 92
 mantra practitioners 57
 mantras 29, 91, 95
Mantrayāna 63, 65, 67
Māyājāla cycle 26, 27, 30, 56, 58, 64,
 69
mChod gzhung 18, 19, 21, 24, 59
mChod phreng rgyas pa 24
mChod thabs 23
mDo chen bka' brgyud gser 'phreng 25–
 29, 57, 58, 61, 63, 64, 66, 94
 mDo-chen tradition. See Gur-rigs
 mDo-chen tradition
mDo dbang cycle 82, 83
mDos 15
mDo sgyu sems gsum 56, 58, 61
 meteoric iron 78
mudrā 78
Nāgā demoness 63
Na rag dong skrugs maṇḍala/cycle 87,
 88
 NGMPP 99
 Ngor-pa tradition 84
nirvāna 60
'pho ba 76

- Phug-pa system 86, 87
 PT 307 17
rDo rje phur pa'i bka'i tha ram 75
rDor sems snying thig 64
rDor sems thugs sgrub 86
rdzong 104
 records of teachings received 64, 91
 by A-mes-zhabs Ngag-dbang Kun-
 dga' bsod-nams 31
 by Brag-dkar rta-so sPrul-sku 24,
 26–27
 by Dalai Lama V 31
 by Nor-bu bde-chen 105–109,
 113–118
 by Padma rgya-mtsho 112, 113
 by rGyal-sras seng-ge 110, 111,
 115, 119
 ritual literature 14
 rNying-ma-pa 14, 16, 20–23, 26, 27,
 31, 56, 58, 66–68, 77, 102,
 104
rNying ma rgyud 'bum 16, 83–85, 91,
 92
 ṣaḍakṣari formula 91
 sādhana 21
 samādhi 90
 Saṃbhogakāya 70
 saṃsāra 60, 90
sapta mātaraḥ 16
 śarīra 60
 Sa-skyapa school 79, 84
 śāstras 80
 Seven Great/Vajra Mothers 14–17, 23,
 25, 59, 92
 Seven Ma-mo Sisters 13, 15, 17–19,
 21, 22, 24
 Seven Mothers (India) 16, 17
sGrub chen ritual(s) 74, 76, 77, 87
sGrub mchod ritual 87, 92
sGyu 'phrul cycle 26, 82, 87, 88, 91
sGyu 'phrul drva ba 69
sGyu 'phrul rdo rje'i las rim 85
sGyu 'phrul zhi khro 84, 89
sGyu 'phrul zhi khro'i thob yig ye shes 'od
 kyi me long 103
 Sino-Nepalese war 91
 Six White Ones 82
skyid grong jo bo 59
smad 'brug 13
sNgon skal ma 23
so lugs 58
Srog sgrub kyi thob yig utpala'i phreng
 ba 103
stod 'brug 13, 26
 stūpa 63
 sūtras 29, 80, 90
 Sūtrayāna 63, 65, 67
 tantras 56, 57, 61, 63, 84, 90, 103
 Tara Stiftung 9
 temples
 Tibet's first royal 20
 Tibet's first Buddhist 21, 22
 thangka 95
thod rgal 89, 90
 thread-cross effigy 16
Thugs rje chen po ye shes 'od mchog 68,
 89
Thugs sgrub rnam gsum 87
Thugs sgrub las byang 'bring po 15
 Tibetan Buddhist Resource Center 9,
 99
 Translations
 Early 26, 58, 63, 83, 91, 94, 103
 Treasures
 New 81, 86, 87, 104
 Northern 15, 69, 87, 104
Tshe kbrid rdo rje phreng ba 91
 Twelve Female Protectors of the Doc-
 trine 23, 24
upadeśa 56, 90
 upādhyāya 61, 63, 65, 83, 86, 91
 Vajrayāna 70, 82, 95
 Vidyādhara(s) 19, 55, 73–75, 82, 83,
 86, 88
 vinaya 67
 vira 84
 Wheel of Dharma 64
Yang gsang khros pa 65
Yang gsang rdo rje phur pa'i bka'i tha
 ram 74
yuwan 88, 94
Zab tig chos dbyings rang gsal 83, 87
 Zhi-byed tradition 65
Zhi khro cycle 91
Zla ba'i shel 'phreng 19

Plates

Facsimile of *dPal ldan gur rigs mdo chen bryud pa'i lo rgyus nyung ngu'i ngag gi brjod pa padma nā ga'i phreng ba*
(7.5 x 45.5 cm, photographed by the NGMPP in Samagaon Gompa, Nubri, Nepal, April 1992)



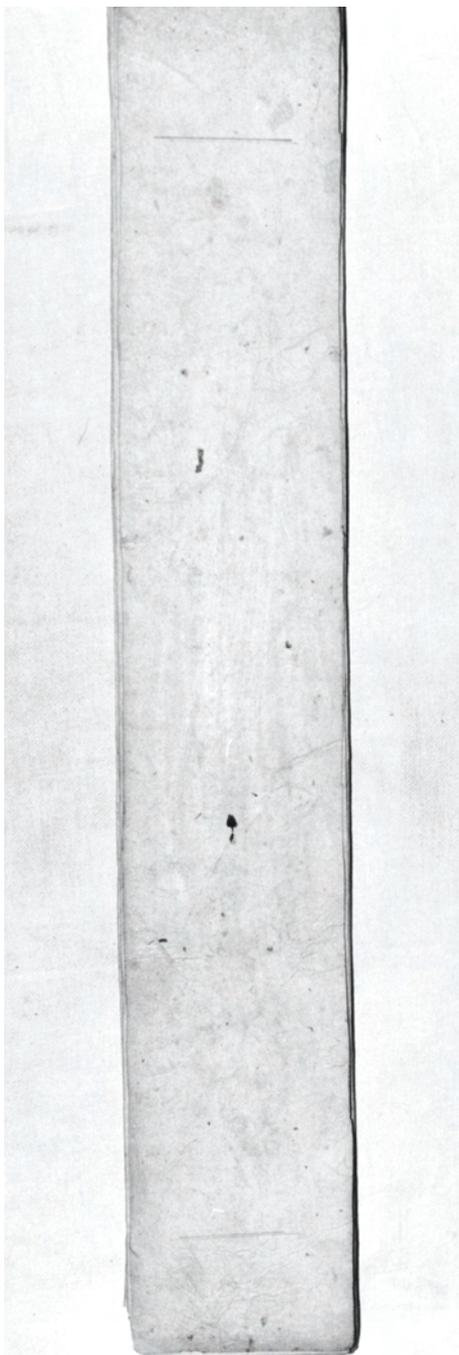
fol. 1a

It should be noted that for the purpose of keeping the file size of this free PDF to a minimum the images below appear in reduced resolution compared to the printed book.

100
 101
 102
 103
 104
 105
 106
 107
 108
 109
 110
 111
 112
 113
 114
 115
 116
 117
 118
 119
 120
 121
 122
 123
 124
 125
 126
 127
 128
 129
 130
 131
 132
 133
 134
 135
 136
 137
 138
 139
 140
 141
 142
 143
 144
 145
 146
 147
 148
 149
 150
 151
 152
 153
 154
 155
 156
 157
 158
 159
 160
 161
 162
 163
 164
 165
 166
 167
 168
 169
 170
 171
 172
 173
 174
 175
 176
 177
 178
 179
 180
 181
 182
 183
 184
 185
 186
 187
 188
 189
 190
 191
 192
 193
 194
 195
 196
 197
 198
 199
 200

201
 202
 203
 204
 205
 206
 207
 208
 209
 210
 211
 212
 213
 214
 215
 216
 217
 218
 219
 220
 221
 222
 223
 224
 225
 226
 227
 228
 229
 230
 231
 232
 233
 234
 235
 236
 237
 238
 239
 240
 241
 242
 243
 244
 245
 246
 247
 248
 249
 250
 251
 252
 253
 254
 255
 256
 257
 258
 259
 260
 261
 262
 263
 264
 265
 266
 267
 268
 269
 270
 271
 272
 273
 274
 275
 276
 277
 278
 279
 280
 281
 282
 283
 284
 285
 286
 287
 288
 289
 290
 291
 292
 293
 294
 295
 296
 297
 298
 299
 300

Handwritten text in a script, likely a form of Tamil or a related South Asian script, arranged in two columns. The text is dense and appears to be a continuous passage. There are some markings and a large symbol at the top of the page.



fol. 22b

